

# CONNECT

2025

تجانية للامتحان

هدية  
مجانية

th

**PRIM.**  
**FIRST TERM**







# Table of contents

## Book Introduction

### Part 1: Previous Year Revision

The Present Simple Tense	6
The Present Continuous Tense	10
The Past Simple Tense	13
The Past Continuous Tense	17

### Part 2: Skills

#### 1. Writing Skills

A) Parts of Speech	19
B) Sentence Formation	21
C) Punctuation marks	22
D) Tips for Writing a Paragraph	24

#### 2. Reading Skills

A) Wh-questions	25
B) How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions	27

## Theme 1 I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي

### Unit 1

#### Green cities

مدن خضراء

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	30
Practice on Lesson 1	34
Lesson 2: Language Focus	40
Practice on Lesson 2	43
Lesson 3: Story	48
Practice on Lesson 3	52
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	54
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	57
Unit 1 Review	59
Check Your Vocabulary	60
Writing Time	61
Student's Book Corner	62
Test Yourself on Unit 1	63
Al-Azhar Corner	65

### Unit 2

#### We are all different

جميعنا مختلفون

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	67
Practice on Lesson 1	71
Lesson 2: Language Focus	76
Practice on Lesson 2	78
Lesson 3: Story	80
Practice on Lesson 3	85
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	87
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	89
Unit 2 Review	91
Check Your Vocabulary	92
Writing Time	93
Student's Book Corner	94
Test Yourself on Unit 2	95
Al-Azhar Corner	97
October Revision	98

### Unit 3

#### Vacation plans

خطط للعطلة

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	102
Practice on Lesson 1	106
Lesson 2: Language Focus	111
Practice on Lesson 2	115
Lesson 3: Story	120
Practice on Lesson 3	124
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	126
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	130
Unit 3 Review	132
Check Your Vocabulary	133
Writing Time	134
Student's Book Corner	135
Test Yourself on Unit 3	136
Al-Azhar Corner	138





## Theme 2 Myself and others نفسى والآخرين

### Unit 4 Celebrate good times احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة

<b>Lesson 1:</b> Vocabulary	141
Practice on Lesson 1	145
<b>Lesson 2:</b> Language Focus	151
Practice on Lesson 2	153
<b>Lesson 3:</b> Story	155
Practice on Lesson 3	160
<b>Lessons 4 &amp; 5:</b> Writing/Project	162
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	166
Unit 4 Review	168
Check Your Vocabulary	169
Writing Time	170
Student's Book Corner	171
Test Yourself on Unit 4	172
Al-Azhar Corner	174
November Revision	175

### Unit 6 Taking care الاعتناء

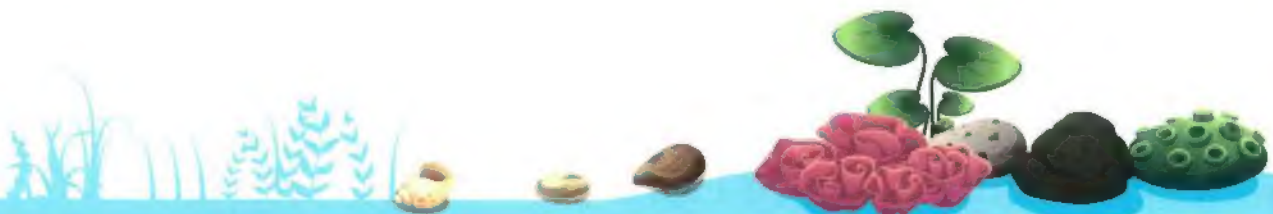
<b>Lesson 1:</b> Vocabulary	214
Practice on Lesson 1	218
<b>Lesson 2:</b> Language Focus	222
Practice on Lesson 2	224
<b>Lesson 3:</b> Story	226
Practice on Lesson 3	231
<b>Lessons 4 &amp; 5:</b> Writing/Project	233
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	236
Unit 6 Review	238
Check Your Vocabulary	239
Writing Time	240
Student's Book Corner	241
Test Yourself on Unit 6	242
Al-Azhar Corner	244

### Unit 5 Amazing journeys رحلات رائعة

<b>Lesson 1:</b> Vocabulary	179
Practice on Lesson 1	183
<b>Lesson 2:</b> Language Focus	188
Practice on Lesson 2	191
<b>Lesson 3:</b> Story	196
Practice on Lesson 3	199
<b>Lessons 4 &amp; 5:</b> Writing/Project	201
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	204
Unit 5 Review	206
Check Your Vocabulary	207
Writing Time	208
Student's Book Corner	209
Test Yourself on Unit 5	210
Al-Azhar Corner	212

### Final Revision & Exams

Revision on Units 1 & 2	246
Revision on Units 3 & 4	254
Revision on Units 5 & 6	261
Conjugation of Verbs	269
Final Exams	271
Al-Azhar Exams	295
امتحانات دمج	301
Tapescripts	305
Writing Time Answers	308





## Part 1:



## Previous Year Revision

### Revision on Grammar

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة قواعد اللغة التي درسها في الأعوام السابقة.

#### 1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

##### Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + ... + الفعل في المصدر

He/ She/ It + (s, es, ies) + ... + المصدر في المصدر

e.g. I **have** milk for breakfast.

e.g. Hoda **gets** up at 6 am every day.

لاحظ

s

e.g. Mona **reads** a book before bedtime.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

es

e.g. Ali **watches** TV in the evening.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x)، يضاف لها (es):

ies

e.g. Manal **studies** her lessons in the evening.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):

Note

e.g. Maged **plays** video games every weekend.

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:

##### Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ We/ You/ They + **don't** + (مصدر الفعل) + ...

He/ She/ It + **doesn't** + (مصدر الفعل) + ...

e.g. The children **don't** go to the park after school.

e.g. Fatma **doesn't** speak English.

ملحوظة

(inf.) هي اختصار لكلمة (infinitive) وهي تعني الفعل في المصدر (في صورته الأساسية دون أية إضافات).



## Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

Do  
DoesI/ you/ we/ they  
he/ she/ it

.... + الفعل في المصدر (inf.) ?

Answer الإجابة

Yes,  
No,

subject (الفاعل)

do / does.  
don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you eat shawerma?  
B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does Amira help mom in the kitchen?  
B: No, she doesn't.

## Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهامdo  
doesI/ you/ we/ they  
he/ she/ it

.... + الفعل في المصدر (inf.) ?

e.g. A: When do you visit your grandpa?  
B: I visit my grandpa on Friday.

e.g. A: Where does she play?  
B: She plays at the park.

## Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

always دائماً

My brother always goes to the club on sunny Saturdays.

usually عادةً

I usually have a sandwich for lunch.

often غالبًا

He often plays football with his friends.

sometimes أحيانًا

We sometimes wake up before 7 am.

never أبدًا

Ola never eats meat.

every (day, week, month, year)  
كل (يوم، أسبوع، شهر، سنة)

I walk to school every day.

لاحظ

تأتي الكلمات الدالة في الجملة كالآتي:

- قبل الفعل مباشرة:

e.g. Maha usually gets up at 7 am.

- بعد (verb to be):

e.g. She is always active.



## Verb to (be) in the present simple tense

الفعل (يكون) في زمن المضارع البسيط

### Affirmative Form

صيغة الإثبات

I am I'm happy.  
He is He's hungry.  
She is She's a nurse.  
It is It's big.

### Negative Form

صيغة النفي

I am not sad.  
He is not = isn't thirsty.  
She is not = isn't a pilot.  
It is not = isn't small.

We are We're early.  
You are You're students.  
They are They're quiet.

We are not = aren't late.  
You are not = aren't teachers.  
They are not = aren't noisy.

### Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

+ **Affirmative:** They are happy.

الإثبات:

? **Question:** Are they happy ?

السؤال:

She is sad.

Is she sad ?

**Short Answer:** Yes, they are/ No, they aren't. Yes, she is/ No, she isn't.

إجابة مختصرة:

### Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهام

am/ is/ are

subject (الفاعل)

...?

eg. A: How are you?

B: I am fine.

eg. A: When is the science lesson?

B: It is at 8 am.



## Practice on the present simple tense

### 1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Our lessons (start – starts – starting – to start) at 8 o'clock in the morning.
- 2 He (speak – speaks – speaking – to speak) English very well.
- 3 Mr. Ali always (washed – wash – washes – washing) his truck on Saturday mornings.
- 4 We (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) listen to the radio in the morning.
- 5 It (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) usually snow here in winter.
- 6 My family and I don't (like – likes – liked – to like) big breakfast.
- 7 Huda doesn't (swim – swims – swam – swimming) in the morning.
- 8 (Do – Does – Is – Have) your sister drive to work?
- 9 (Do – Does – Is – Are) the children work hard at university?
- 10 When does the train (arrive – arrives – arrived – arriving)?
- 11 I (always – often – usually – never) play tennis. I can't play it.
- 12 They (always – sometimes – every – never) drive to school. They never take the bus.
- 13 The books (am – is – are – be) on my desk.
- 14 The class (am – is – are – be) very big.
- 15 I (am not – isn't – aren't – don't) from Spain.

### 2 Read and correct:

- 1 You ..... (eats) too much unhealthy food.
- 2 Noha never ..... (have) coffee at night.
- 3 The village shop ..... (open) at 8 in the morning.
- 4 Dina ..... (goes always) to her school on her bike.
- 5 A lot of birds ..... (flying) south in the winter.
- 6 I learn English, but I ..... (doesn't) speak it very well.
- 7 She is ..... (always) tired after work. She's active.
- 8 Amr ..... (don't) go on holiday every year.
- 9 ..... (Do) it often rain?
- 10 How ..... (does) you usually go to work?
- 11 ..... (be) they at home?
- 12 Do you often ..... (giving) your sister a present?



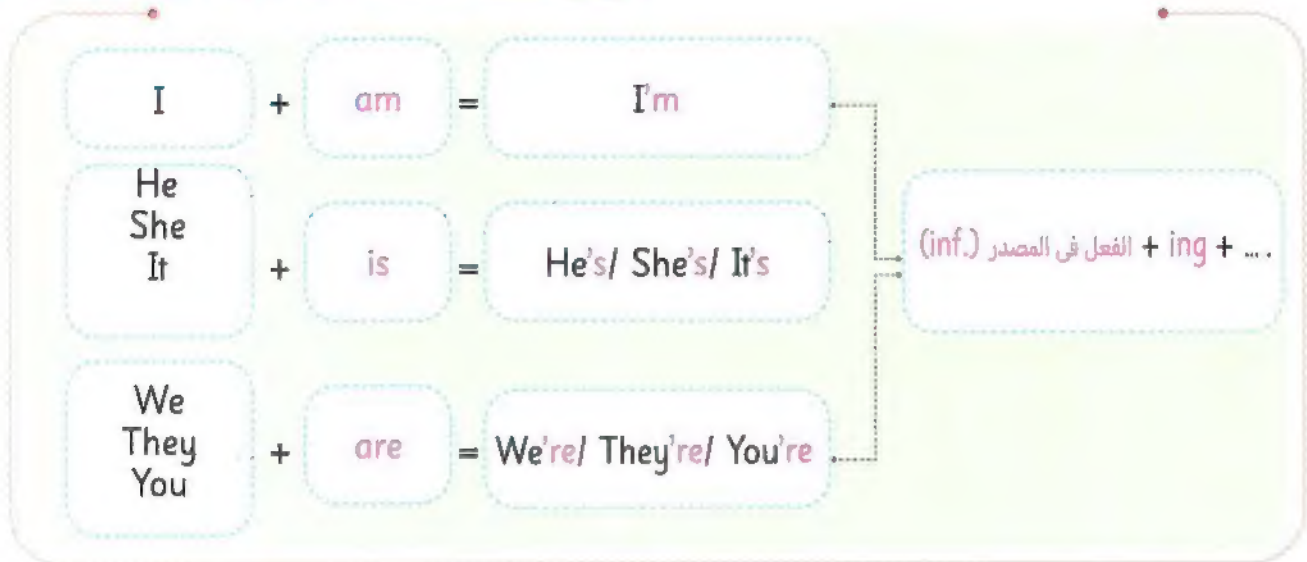
## 2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action happening right now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.

### Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:



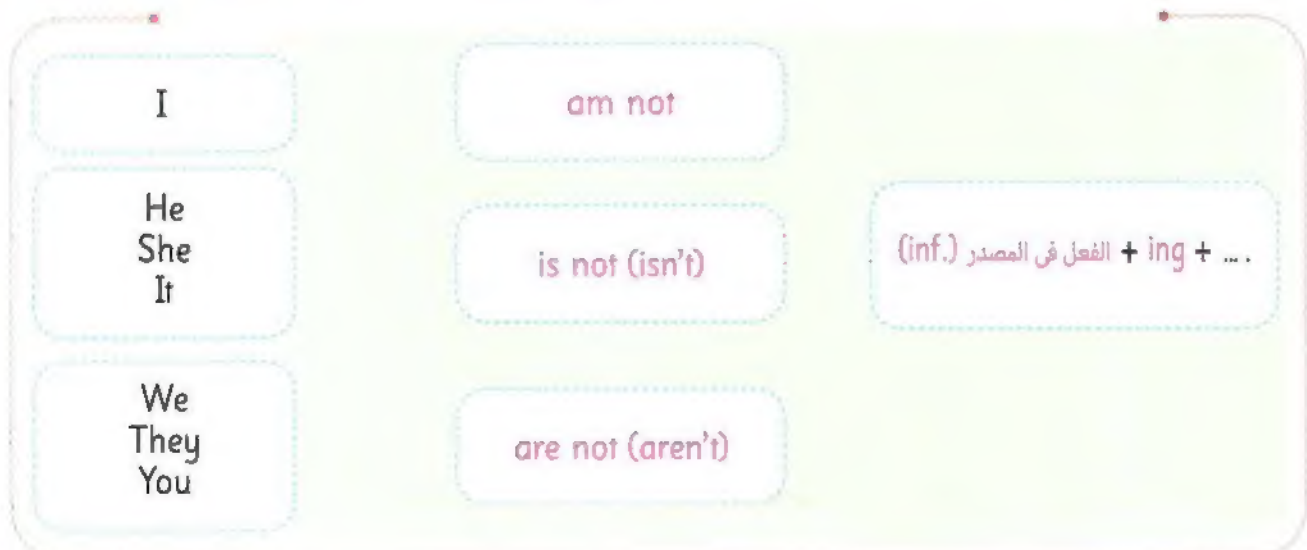
e.g. I **am working** at home.

e.g. The baby **is learning** to walk.

e.g. Adel and I **are staying** at a hotel.

### Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:



e.g. I **am not going** to school now.

e.g. Noha **isn't washing** the dishes.

e.g. They **aren't selling** the house.



## Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

Is

Are

he/ she/ it

you/ we/ they

(inf.) + ing + ...?

Answer الإجابة

Yes,

No,

subject (الفاعل)

am/ is/ are.

am not/ isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is it raining outside?

B: Yes, it is.

ملحوظة: تتحول (Are you) في السؤال إلى (I am/ We are) في الإجابة.

e.g. A: Are you doing your homework now?

B: No, I am not.

e.g. A: Are you coming to the party this week?

B: Yes, we are.

## Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهام

is/ are

subject (الفاعل)

(inf.) + ing + ...?

e.g. A: What book is Alaa reading?

B: She is reading a science book.

e.g. A: Why are you running?

B: Because we are exercising.

## Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

Look!

انظر

Look! They are drinking juice.

Listen!

استمع

Listen! Mom is calling.

now

الآن

Hadya is going home now.

at the moment

في هذه اللحظة

I'm working at the moment.

this (time)

هذا (وقت)

Mom and Dad are staying in the village this summer.

## Practice on the present continuous tense

### 1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I am (wait – waits – waiting – waited) for a letter from my parents today.
- 2 A: Where is Nada? B: She (have – has – having – is having) a shower.
- 3 My sister is in the kitchen. She (cook – cooks – is cooking – are cooking) lunch today.
- 4 Look! Soha (reads – is reading – read – to read) on the sofa.
- 5 We're (visited – visit – visiting – visits) our grandparents this week.
- 6 Look! They (run – runs – is running – are running) on the track.
- 7 Ahmed and Ali (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) studying their lessons.
- 8 Mazen (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) washing his car.
- 9 Is your friend (studies – study – studied – studying) now?
- 10 (Do – Are – Does – Is) you waiting for a bus?
- 11 Why are you (shouts – shout – shouting – shouted)?
- 12 A: Are you reading the story now? B: Yes, (we do – you are – I am – am I).
- 13 What (you are – are you – you do – do you) watching now?
- 14 How many sandwiches (are they – they are – they do – do they) eating at the moment?
- 15 What are the children (lean – learns – learned – learning)?

### 2 Read and correct:

- 1 She ..... (read) in her bedroom at the moment.
- 2 Look! The sun is ..... (shine) brightly.
- 3 Listen! The kids ..... (be play) in the playground.
- 4 He ..... (not) looking for his keys.
- 5 The kids ..... (not) having a good time.
- 6 No, she ..... (doesn't) listening to music now.
- 7 ..... (Is) you doing your homework?
- 8 ..... (Does) your mother working now?
- 9 She's reading a book ..... (yesterday).
- 10 Why are you ..... (learn) English this year?
- 11 Are you ..... (clean) the room?
- 12 Is ..... (they) studying?



### 3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past at a certain time.

- نستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل (regular verbs / irregular verbs) في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- الأفعال المنتظمة (regular verbs) تتكون بإضافة الـ (ed / d / ied) للفعل:

#### 1. Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): travel — traveled	الأفعال المنتهية بـ (d) يضاف لها فقط: (d) move — moved	الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (ed) يضاف لها (ied) ويحذف الـ (d): study — studied	الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن: stop — stopped
--	---	--	---

- الأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular verbs) لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضي البسيط وتحفظ كما هي، على سبيل المثال:

#### 2. Irregular Verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore	come	came
go	went	get	got	write	wrote	grow	grew
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left	have	had
drink	drank	do	did	sing	sang	eat	ate

#### Affirmative Form

... + التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

e.g. It rained heavily yesterday.

Hala went to the cinema last week.

#### Negative Form

... + (inf.) + didn't + Subject

e.g. Manal didn't do the housework yesterday.

## Yes/No Questions

## Question السؤال

Did + subject ( ) + (nf) الفعل في المصدر ...?



## Answer الإجابة

B Yes  
B No

subject ( )

did  
didn't.

e.g.

Did you finish the book?

Or

B Yes, I did.

B No, I didn't.

## Wh-Questions

Wh-word

did

subject ( )

...? + الفعل في المصدر (nf)

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

e.g.

A What did they do last night?

B: They went out for dinner.

## Keywords

yesterday

أمس

Magdy found his wallet yesterday.

last

الماضي

I called Mohamed last night.

ago

منذ

The film started five minutes ago.

in the past

في الماضي

My parent lived in China in the past.



## Verb to (be) in the past simple tense

الفعل (يكون) في زمن الماضي البسيط

### Affirmative Form

صيغة الإثبات

I **was** happy.  
He **was** hungry.  
She **was** a nurse.  
It **was** big.

We **were** early.  
You **were** at school.  
They **were** quiet.

### Negative Form

صيغة النفي

I **was not = wasn't** sad.  
He **was not = wasn't** thirsty.  
She **was not = wasn't** a teacher.  
It **was not = wasn't** small.

We **were not = weren't** late.  
You **were not = weren't** at home.  
They **were not = weren't** noisy.

### Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

+ **Affirmative:** They **were** happy.

الإثبات:

? **Question:** **Were** they happy ?

السؤال:

**Short Answer:** Yes, they **were** /  
No, they **weren't**.  
إجابة مختصرة:

She **was** sad.

**was** she sad ?

Yes, she **was** /  
No, she **wasn't**.

### Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word  
كلمة الاستفهام

**was**

**were**

I/ he/ she/ it

we/ they/ you

...?

لاحظ

e.g. A: Where **were** you yesterday?

B: We **were** at school.

e.g. A: Where **were** you yesterday?

B: I **was** at my friend's house.

## Practice on the past simple tense

### 1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 They (~~go~~ — ~~went~~ — ~~goes~~ — ~~going~~) to the mountain last winter.
- 2 The programme (~~starts~~ — ~~start~~ — ~~started~~ — ~~starting~~) at 7:30 yesterday.
- 3 We (~~live~~ — ~~lives~~ — ~~living~~ — ~~lived~~) in a village in the past.
- 4 Mai (~~meets~~ — ~~met~~ — ~~meeting~~ — ~~meet~~) Noha from school 2 hours ago.
- 5 They (~~don't~~ — ~~doesn't~~ — ~~don't~~ — ~~aren't~~) leave home last night.
- 6 Adel (~~don't~~ — ~~doesn't~~ — ~~isn't~~ — ~~didn't~~) want to go out yesterday.
- 7 He didn't (~~has~~ — ~~have~~ — ~~had~~ — ~~having~~) eggs for breakfast.
- 8 The bird didn't (~~eat~~ — ~~eats~~ — ~~eating~~ — ~~ate~~) the seeds.
- 9 (~~Do~~ — ~~Does~~ — ~~Did~~ — ~~Are~~) they ride their bikes to school last week?
- 10 Did Eman feel tired? B Yes, she (~~do~~ — ~~does~~ — ~~did~~ — ~~doing~~).
- 11 Did you stay in a good hotel? B No, (~~I did~~ — ~~you did~~ — ~~I don't~~ — ~~you didn't~~).
- 12 Where (~~do~~ — ~~does~~ — ~~did~~ — ~~are~~) they travel last holiday?
- 13 When did you (~~stops~~ — ~~stop~~ — ~~stopped~~ — ~~stopping~~) smoking?
- 14 They (~~was~~ — ~~were~~ — ~~is~~ — ~~are~~) in the garden yesterday.
- 15 He (~~wasn't~~ — ~~weren't~~ — ~~didn't~~ — ~~aren't~~) at home last Saturday.

### 2 Read and correct:

- 1 They ..... (~~eat~~) cheese for dinner yesterday.
- 2 Did Maria ..... (~~drove~~) to work this morning?
- 3 I ..... (~~not~~) finish my homework last night.
- 4 ..... (~~Be~~) you busy last Monday?
- 5 ..... (~~Do~~) she buy a new car yesterday?
- 6 I ..... (~~go~~) to Spain two years ago.
- 7 ..... (~~Be~~) Sara late for the meeting?
- 8 Who did you ..... (~~talked~~) to?
- 9 I ..... (~~not read~~) that book last year.
- 10 Nehal ..... (~~flies~~) to Japan last week.
- 11 He ..... (~~not be~~) at home last night.
- 12 Did they ..... (~~has~~) a good time at the party?



## 4. The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

We use the past continuous tense to express something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

### Affirmative Form

I/ He/ She/ It	was	inf. ... + ing ...
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g: I **was having** a bath at 7 am.

My friends and I **were eating** lunch at 3 o'clock yesterday.

### Negative Form

I/ He/ She/ It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ...
You/ We/ They	were not (weren't)	

e.g: Hala **wasn't reading** the newspaper at yesterday morning.

Ali and Wael **weren't playing** football at 9 pm.

### Yes/No Question

Question السؤال	Was	he/ she/ it	inf. ... + ing ... ?
	Were	you/ we/ they	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject ( )	was/ were
	No,		wasn't/ weren't.

### Wh- Question

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	was	he/ she/ it	(inf.) ... + ing ... ?
	were	you/ we/ they	

e.g: A: What **was** Nader **doing** at 6 am yesterday?

B: He **was having** breakfast.

e.g: A: What **were** the girls **doing** at 7 in the evening?

B: They **were watching** TV.

all (day/ morning/ evening/ night/ yesterday)  
at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm/ yesterday)

- e.g. The children were playing all day yesterday.  
Dad was working at 9 yesterday morning.

## Practice on the past continuous tense

Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 They (~~are~~ ~~were~~ ~~is~~ ~~was~~) studying English yesterday at 10 am.
- 2 He (~~played~~ ~~was playing~~ ~~will play~~ ~~is playing~~) at 3 pm yesterday.
- 3 What were the children (~~do~~ ~~are~~ ~~was~~ ~~were~~) at 8 am yesterday?
- 4 Was (he – they – you – we) having a great time?
- 5 I (~~were~~ – ~~is~~ – ~~was~~ – ~~are~~) traveling by boat to the island.
- 6 I (~~slept~~ – ~~was sleeping~~ – ~~sleep~~ – ~~sleeps~~) at 6 am yesterday.
- 7 (~~Does~~ ~~Was~~ ~~is~~ ~~are~~) she making her bed? B Yes, she was.
- 8 Were they (~~swimming~~ – ~~swim~~ – ~~swims~~ – ~~swam~~) in the sea?
- 9 Were you studying English? L No, we (~~were~~ ~~are~~ ~~do~~ ~~weren't~~).
- 10 (~~Was~~ – ~~Were~~ – ~~Do~~ – ~~Have~~) you listening to music?

Check

Read and correct:

- 1 The tiger was ..... (drink) water.
- 2 ..... (be) he swimming in the lake yesterday morning?
- 3 She ..... (walk) to school at 8 am yesterday.
- 4 A: ..... (Be you) making fatta? B: Yes, I was.
- 5 A: Was she watching TV? B: Yes, she ..... (wasn't).
- 6 He ..... (were) having a good time yesterday evening.
- 7 Was the cat ..... (ran)?





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة:

## 1. Writing Skills



### Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

Nouns

الأسماء

Pronouns

الضمائر

Verbs

الأفعال

Adjectives

الصفات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

#### Nouns

\* هي اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

eg Ali, lion, market, bike ...

\* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلاً (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولاً به (بعد الفعل).

eg Ali has a big house.

Lions are the strongest animals.

#### Underline the nouns:

- 1 Nada is short.
- 2 My car is new.
- 3 I have a car.

#### Pronouns

\* تحل محل الأسماء.

eg I, we, it ...

eg We are very happy.

They have two children.

It is a bag.

#### Circle the pronoun:

- 1 (Nour – She) is clever.
- 2 (They – The students) are very active.
- 3 What is (Sarah – she) doing?

#### Verbs

\* يعبر عن حدث.

eg eat, play, do, ...

\* يأتي الفعل بعد الفاعل.

eg We eat our lunch at 3 pm.

She walks to work every day.

#### Read the story and circle the verbs:

I visit my grandparent every week. I go to the club every Friday. I play tennis and meet my friends. We have lunch together and go to the cinema.

#### Adjectives

\* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

eg new, big, thirsty, ...

\* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

eg This is the tall giraffe.

The elephant is big.

#### Circle the adjective:

- 1 long – dress – house – pen
- 2 write – eat – scary – jump
- 3 car – school – park – thin

## Prepositions

\* للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

eg on, next to, in front of, ...

\* تأتي حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

The book is on the bed.The teacher is in front of the board.

## Check

## Read and reorder:

1 the table – The bag – on – is.2 on – The hat – my head – is.3 office - is – in – his – Dad.

## Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at with times:  
مع الأوقات

3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night

in with months, seasons,  
and years:  
مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات

summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018

on with days and dates:  
مع الأيام والتواريخ

Friday/ 5<sup>th</sup> May/ May 5<sup>th</sup>

## Check

## Read and choose:

- 1 I go to bed (at – in – on) 10 o'clock.
- 2 We have English class (in – on – by) Sunday.
- 3 They go to school (at – on – by) bus.
- 4 I was born (in – on – at) 2010.
- 5 See you (in – on – at) Friday.
- 6 I brush my teeth (in – on – at) the morning.
- 7 The match is (in – on – at) 4 o'clock.
- 8 He usually goes on holiday (in – on – at) July.





## Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يوجد جمل اسمية وجمل فعلية ولكن تتكون الجملة من الآتي:

Subject  
الفاعل

+

Verb  
الفعل

+

Complement  
تكملة الجملة

e.g. We like English.

e.g. Waleed has a car.

e.g. Nora is clever.

1- الفاعل (subject): هو من قام بالفعل ودائمًا ما يأتي في بداية الجملة ويمكن أن يكون اسم (شخص / بلد / مكان / حيوان / شيء) أو ضميرًا.

e.g. Kareem eats fish.

Our house is big.

The flower is red.

e.g. Alexandria is a beautiful city.

Elephants eat grass.

She is a good teacher.

### Check

**Read and choose the correct subject:**

- 1 (A monkey – A table – Ali) studies English well.
- 2 (Trees – Lions – Leaves) eat meat.
- 3 (Egypt – A cake – A flower) is a nice place.

2- الفعل (verb): هو ما قام به الفاعل، ودائمًا ما يأتي بعده مباشرة.

e.g. They eat fish for lunch.

The boy is playing football.

Hana takes the bus to work.

### Check

**Read and underline the verb:**

- 1 We eat sandwiches for breakfast.
- 2 Lara makes the cake for the parties.
- 3 My friends play in the playground.

3- تكملة الجملة ( ) : هو ما يأتي بعد الفعل مباشرة وقد تكون (اسمًا / ضميرًا / صفة / ظرفًا / حرف جر / ...).

e.g.

I play vide .....

Hana is th .....

I love .....

I have .....

Grandma walks slowly.

### Check

**Read and reorder:**

- 1 many – I – read – books. ....
- 2 are – animals – Elephants – big. ....
- 3 go – We – Friday – swimming – on. ....



**Capital letters**  
الحروف الكبيرة

1. Hadeer lives in Luxor.
2. Jack speaks English and French.
3. Today is Tuesday.
4. I visited the Eiffel Tower in Paris.

**Punctuate the following:**

- 1 i play basketball every week.
- 2 He went to japan last year.
- 3 My brother mahmoud is a doctor.



**Period (Full stop)**  
النقطة

This is my friend Asmaa.  
Do your homework, please.



**Question mark**  
علامة الاستفهام

**\* Wh- question:**  
When do you sleep  
**\* Yes/ No Question:**  
Do you have a computer



**Exclamation mark**  
علامة التعجب

Hello! / Wow! / What a nice day!

**Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):**

- 1 The flower is red
- 2 When is the English class
- 3 I like spaghetti
- 4 You're great
- 5 Do children like ice cream
- 6 Wow





الفاصلة السفلى

eg I like football, tennis, and basketball.

Yes, of course.

I like playing sports but I don't like reading books.

Can I have some tea, please?

نستخدم الفاصلة لتفصل قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

نستخدم بعد Yes / No في الإجابات.

نستخدم قبل But.

نستخدم قبل please إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Check

Put the (,) in the right place:

- 1 He eats chicken but he doesn't eat eggs.
- 2 Hana's hobbies are reading, drawing and swimming.
- 3 Yes she has a bike.



Apostrophe  
الفاصلة العليا

eg My sister's car is big.  
I'm a boy.  
Omar isn't at school.

Check

Put the (') in the right place:

- 1 This is Hana's room.
- 2 They're my friends.
- 3 What's your address?

## Practice on punctuation marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

- 1 i love cooking baking, and playing football.
- 2 huda goes to the club on thursday.
- 3 What's your favorite subject
- 4 do they like apples
- 5 the baby is sleeping
- 6 i like to eat cheese
- 7 don't speak in the library.



## نصائح لكتابة فقرة Tips for Writing a Paragraph

### How to write a paragraph

استخدم علامات الترقيم الصحيحة .punctuation

اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.

ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير .capital letter

ضع نقطة آخر الجملة (.) .period

استخدم جملاً بسيطة مرتبة.

استخدم الزمن المناسب.

تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

مسافة قبل أول جملة

أول كل جملة حرف capital

### My school

School is a place where we learn new things every day. In grade 6, we study interesting subjects like math, science, languages, and arts. We also have fun activities like art and recess. School is a place where we make friends and create memories that last a lifetime.

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم  
comma

نهاية كل جملة period

## 2. Reading Skills



### Wh- Questions

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الأستفهام والاجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? ماذا يسأل عن الأشياء

A: What are these?

B: These are pencils.

Where ...? أين يسأل عن المكان

A: Where is Mai?

B: She is at school.

When ...? متى (السؤال عن الوقت)

A: When do you go to work?

B: I go to work at eight in the morning.

Who ...? من (السؤال عن العاقل)

A: Who is he?

B: He is my brother Youssef.

Whose ...? لمن (السؤال عن الملكية)

A: Whose doll is this?

B: This is my doll. / This doll is mine.

Which ...? أي (السؤال عن الاختيار)

A: Which cake do you want?

B: I want the chocolate cake.

### Check

#### Read and choose:

- 1 (What – Who) is she?
- 2 A: Who is he? B: He is my (car – grandpa).
- 3 A: (Where – Who) won the match? B: Ola.
- 4 A: What is this? B: This is (a horse – a girl).
- 5 (Who – What) is her name?
- 6 (What – Whose) bag is this? B: It's Mona's bag.
- 7 A (When – Where) are they? B: They are at the park.
- 8 A (Who – Which) jacket do you want? B: The brown jacket.
- 9 A (What – Where) do you study? B: I study in my room.
- 10 A: (Who – When) is the race? B: At 7 am.



## How ...?

A: How do you go to work?  
B: I go to work by bus.

## How many ...? كم ... من العدد

A: How many flowers are there?  
B: There are ten flowers.

## How old ...?

A: How old are you?  
B: I'm eleven years old.

## How long ...?

1. A: How long do you study science?  
B: I study science for an hour every day.  
2. A: How long is this street?  
B: It is 10 meters long.

## How much ...?

1. A: How much are the tomatoes?  
B: They are five pounds.  
2. A: How much milk do you drink?  
B: I drink one cup of milk a day.

## Why ...?

A: Why didn't you come to the club?  
B: I didn't come because I was ill.

## Check

## Read and choose:

- (Who – How) many mangoes are there in the box?
- How (much – many) dresses did you buy?
- A: How many boys are there? B: (At school – Fifteen).
- (Who – How) old is he?
- How (many – old) is your sister?
- A: How old are they? B: They're (a teacher – 10).
- A: How (long – old) is the door? B: It's 90 cm.
- A: (When – How) do you go to the park? B: I drive to the park.
- A: (What – Why) didn't you come to the party?  
B: I didn't come because I was studying for an exam.
- A: (When – How) much is the scooter? B: It's one thousand pounds.



## How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions

### كيفية الإجابة على أسئلة قطعة الفهم

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy. There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and swimming. When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit. Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork. Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active!

#### A) Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.

تحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها بعناية ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التي تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about .....

a) playing video games

b) sports

c) reading books

d) playing sports

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and .....

a) reading

b) drawing

c) swimming

d) singing

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

لتحديد واستيعاب معاني الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التي و... فيها، ثم لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناءً على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "healthy" means .....

a) bad

b) harmful

c) good

d) weak

#### B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

What are sports?

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy

Make logical inferences from the text.

Infer the importance **أهمية** of sports.

When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit

Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork

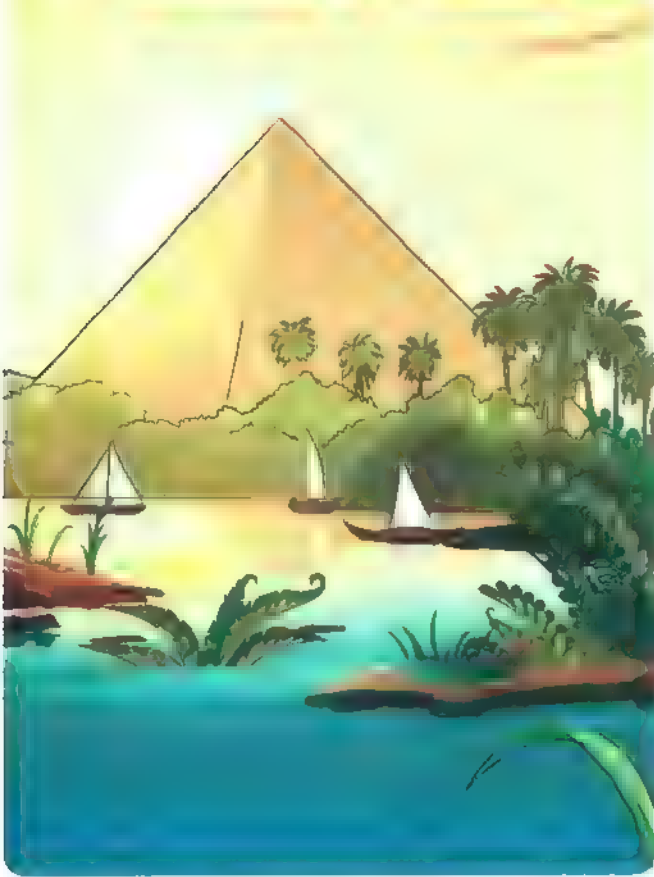
Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

Summarize the passage in one sentence.

Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active

# Theme 1

I discover myself  
more useful





# Unit

1

# Green cities

مدن خضراء



## Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.

talk about how often he/she does things.

listen and read about a project to make a city greener.

say the sounds "th" and "s".

write an informal email about things he/she misses about Egypt.

research and make an infographic about his/her area.

• سهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على ان:

يستمع ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن مساحات خضراء في المدن.

يستمع ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل مدينة أكثر خضراء.  
يقول الأصوات "th" و "s".

ويكتب رسالة غير رسمية عن أشياء يفقد عن مصر.

## Did you know?

\* Urban greening is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's \*roofs.

## Find out!

Al-Azhar Park is a \*public park located in Cairo, Egypt. This park is \*listed as one of the world's sixty great public spaces by the Project for Public Spaces.

* Urban greening	تخضير المناطق الحضرية	* roofs	أسطح	* public	عام	* listed as	مدرجة ضمن
------------------	-----------------------	---------	------	----------	-----	-------------	-----------



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

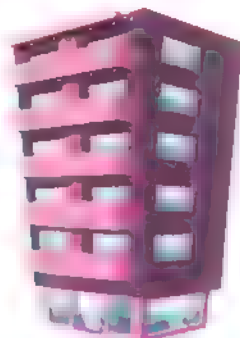


### Main vocabulary



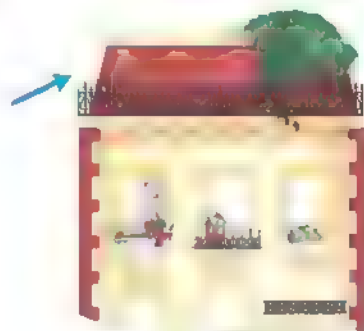
natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



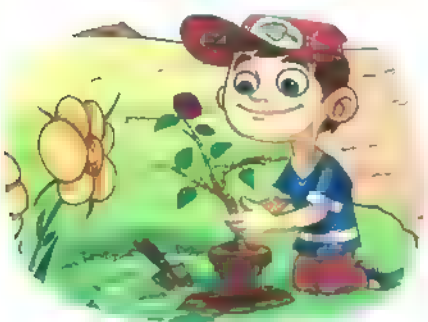
apartment block

عمارة سكنية



roof

سطح



plant

يزرع



chemicals

مواد كيميائية



harvest

يحصد

### Extra vocabulary

community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	space	مساحة	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حي (مكان)	vegetables	خضراوات	market	سوق
peppers	فلفل	onions	بصل	lettuce	خس
lemons	ليمون	dates	بلح	own (adj)	خاص
fresh (adj)	طازج	organic (adj)	عضوي	square meter	متر مربع
roof garden	حديقة السطح	a year	سنوياً	health	صحة
summary	ملخص	local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة



Let's say it right!

▶ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) في كلمتي (chemicals) و (school) ينطقان (k) (ك).

▶ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) في كلمة (neighborhood) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
plant	يُزرع	planted		harvest	يُحصَد	harvested
produce	يُنتج	produced		mention	يُذكر	mentioned

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
grow	يُزرع	grew		mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
sell	يُباع	sold		think	يعتقد	thought

## Expressions and Phrases

on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة	on Friday afternoons	في أوقات الظهيرة يوم الجمعة
on the roof	على السطح	that's interesting	هذا رائع
all the time	طوال الوقت	in the middle of ...	في منتصف ...
Wow!	رائع!	which means	مما يعني
that's not all	هذا ليس كل شيء	good for	جيد لـ
make friends	يُكوّن صداقات	It sounds great!	هذا يبدو رائعًا!

## Important sentences جمل هامة

- \* Mariam always helps her aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.  
تساعد مريم خالتها دائمًا بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في الحديقة المجتمعية.
- \* The community garden is a big green space on the roof of the apartment block.  
الحديقة المجتمعية عبارة عن مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح العمارة السكنية.
- \* People who work there are all volunteers.  
الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون.
- \* People grow vegetables to eat and sometimes sell them in the market.  
يقوم الناس بزراعة الخضراوات ليأكلوها وفي بعض الأحيان يبيعونها في السوق.
- \* They only use natural fertilizer, so their food is fresh and organic.  
يستخدمون الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط، لذا فإن طعامهم طازج وعضوي.

## Check

## Choose the correct answer:

## اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When plants grow well and become green, we (clean – produce – harvest – plant) them.
- (Potatoes – Lettuce – Date – Lemon) is a green plant with a lot of leaves.
- We live in a/an (roof – garden – apartment block – street) of eleven floors.
- We never use (chemicals – fertilizers – plants – water) to grow our food. Our food is organic.
- A community (market – garden – park – apartment) is a big green space on a roof.
- You will find a lot of shops in the (roof – block – neighborhood – garden).





## 2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Nour

No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

سكرو، يا نورة، لكني دائماً ساعده عمي ظهر يوم الجمعة في حديقة المجتمع

Mariam



Nour

The community garden? What's that?



It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

ايها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمي سلمى. الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون من الحي. نحن نزرع الخضراوات لنأكلها، وأحياناً نبيعها في السوق أيضاً

Mariam



Nour

That's interesting. What things do you grow?



Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

حسناً، عادة نزرع الطماطم + فلفل + بصل + خس - أشياء  
التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع  
شجر مثمرة. هذا العام لدينا ليمون وتمر

Mariam





Nour

And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

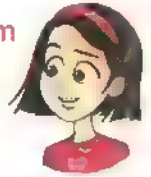
و نتم زرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة. رائع



Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic, too, which means we only use natural fertilizer – we never use chemicals.

نعم، هذا يعني أن بإمكان الناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج وهو عضوي أيضاً، مما يعني أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط. لا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبداً.

Mariam



Nour

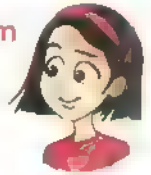
Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

هل سح حديقك الكثير من الخضار؟

Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. They are also a great place to meet people and make friends.

نعم إنها كذلك. يمكننا حصاد عشرين كيلو جراماً من الخضار سنوياً من مساحة متر مربع واحد فقط من حديقته السطح. وهذا ليس كل شيء. تساعد حدائق الأسطح أيضاً في تنقية الهواء في المدينة، وهذا مفيد لصحة الناس. وهي مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.

Mariam



Nour

It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

هذا يبدو رائعاً يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجمعة مثل تلك في مدينتنا!

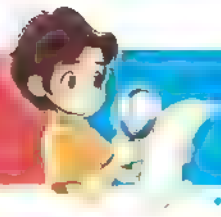
### Take care!

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g: I help my mom on Friday/Friday afternoons.

- بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كـ verb (فعل) أو noun (اسم):

noun اسم	verb فعل
plant نبات	plant يزرع
٣٦ The plants are green.	٣٩ We usually plant tomatoes and onions.
harvest محصول	harvest يحصد
٣٩ We had a good harvest this year.	٣٩ We can harvest 20 kilos of vegetables a year.



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- Ola helps her father with the .....  
a) homework    b) housework    c) roof garden    d) school work
- They grow vegetables like onions, tomatoes, and .....  
a) carrots    b) lettuce    c) potatoes    d) peppers
- They grow fruits like lemons and .....  
a) apples    b) dates    c) mangoes    d) bananas
- They use natural fertilizer, so the food is .....  
a) delicious    b) organic    c) green    d) tasty



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My friends and I are ..... at the community garden. We work for no money.  
a) workers    b) students    c) volunteers    d) farmers
- To get organic food, we use natural .....  
a) tools    b) gardens    c) chemicals    d) fertilizers
- I help my aunt at the community garden on the .....  
a) house    b) market    c) area    d) roof
- Do you like eating .....?  
a) games    b) vegetables    c) air    d) villages
- ..... food is good for your health.  
a) Organic    b) Chemical    c) Local    d) Unhealthy

القاهرة - إدارة الوايل التعليمية 2024

بوسعيد - مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

harvest – organic – water – air – volunteer

I'm Hana. I am in grade six. I am a ..... (1) ..... at the school project to help with the garden on the school roof. We grow ..... (2) ..... vegetables and fruits. We ..... (3) ..... twenty kilos of vegetables and fruit a year. Also, roof gardens help clean the ..... (4) ..... in our city. Which is good for our health.



## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واحب عن الأسئلة:

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the roof of her aunt's apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruits for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new friends. She thinks that we need more community roof gardens in our city.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) Nour      b) Mariam      c) an apartment block      d) a community garden
- 2 The underlined word "grow" means .....  
 a) harvest      b) plant      c) water      d) clean
- 3 We need ..... community roof gardens in our city.  
 a) less      b) little      c) more      d) few

### Answer the following questions:

- 4 Where is the community garden?  
 .....
- 5 Why is the community garden a good idea?  
 .....

## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 the – all – We – vegetables – plant – time.  
 .....

- 2 neighborhood – our – in – a community – We – garden – have.  
 .....

الدقهلية - إدارة طلحها التعليمية 2024

- 3 do – What – you – grow – things?  
 .....

## Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم اللائي:

- 1 my favorite food is lettuce  
 .....

- 2 do you like to eat organic food  
 .....



**We always work hard** نحن دائماً نعمل بجد



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary

logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)	aid	مساعدة	mini (adj.)	مصغر
forest	غابة	organization	مظلمة	nature	الطبيعة
wildlife	الحياة البرية	data	بيانات	effects	تأثيرات

### Extra vocabulary

news	أخبار	urban (adj.)	حضرى	location	موقع
foreign (adj.)	أجبي	project	مشروع	naturally	طبيعياً
climate	مناخ	enough (adj.)	كافٍ	link	رابط
research	بحث	date palm	نخلة	city center	وسط المدينة
movie theater	صالة السينما	the countryside	الريف	square	ميدان
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	competition	مسابقة	region	منطقة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
join	joined	contact	contacted
collect	collected	text	texted
miss	missed	enter	entered

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
become	became	understand	understood
spend	spent	meet	met

### Expressions and Phrases

work hard	يعمل بجد	look after	يعتني بـ
over time	مع مرور الوقت	go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات
Is something wrong?	هل هناك مشكلة؟	on time	في الوقت المحدد
on weekends	في إجازات نهاية الأسبوع	spend time with	يقضى وقتاً مع
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	a long way from	تبعد كثيراً عن
meet up for the holiday	نلتقى في العطلة	Not really.	ليس تماماً.
look nice	يبدو لطيفاً	enter a competition	يشارك في مسابقة



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الصفحة الرئيسية

معلومات عن الصفحة

انضم إلينا

أحدث الأخبار

تواصل معنا

Home

About

Join us

Latest News

Contact us



# Earth Aid

## What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals and other living things.

Mini Forest «الغابة الصغيرة» هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدينا، تساعد هذه المناطق بحضراء الممرات، ليس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة، وتساعد حيث تربية مثل السبات وحيوانات وكائنات حية أخرى.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

في Mini Forest، دائماً نعمل بجد للعثور على أفضل المواقع لخصبة لغاباتنا، حيث نحتاج الناس وحياء البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرها.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية أبداً في مشاريعنا، نحن دائماً نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقته ما ونعنى بها بحرص حتى تصبح غابة صغيرة.

We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time.

نعمل أيضاً عادة مع المجتمعات المحلية لرعاية الغابات والاعتناء بها بمرور الوقت.

We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

لجمع السبات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات في الشهر. يساعدنا هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الناس والحياء البرية ومناخ المنطقة.

We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out more.

نادراً ما يكون لدينا عدد كاف من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك نسعد دائماً عندما يعرض الناس لمساعدتنا، انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.



## 3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



## Listening script page 8 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

## Where do the friends decide to go on Saturdays?

أين يقرر الأصدقاء الذهاب يوم السبت؟



What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?



I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

عادة ما أقضي أوقات مع أخواتي. غالبًا ما نذهب للتسوق في وسط المدينة، أو نذهب أحيانًا إلى السينما. ماذا عنك؟



I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

لا أذهب إلى المدينة في كثير من الأحيان. عادة ما أبقى في المنزل وساعد أمي، لكن أحيانًا أقوم بزيارة أجدادي مع أختي أيني وأطفالها.



Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

أين يعيش أجدادك يا نادين؟



They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a city called Assuit. Do you know it? It's on the river Nile.

يقيمون في الريف في مزرعة. إنها بالقرب من مدينة تسمى أسيوط. هل تعرفونها؟ إنها على نهر النيل.



Assuit? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

أسيوط؟ ناعد كثيرًا عن هنا. كم مرة ترونهم؟



About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

حوالي مرة واحدة في الشهر. يستطيع أختي القيادة لذا فهي عادة ما تأخذني في سيارتها. ونحن دائمًا نحاول أن نجتمع للعيد في عيد الأضحية أيضًا. عادة ما نبقى لمدة أسبوع في منزلهم بعد ذلك.

Gameela



I love Eid Al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!

أحب عيد الأضحية! نلتقي دائمًا مع عائلة أمي في لإحارة، بهم حصف صاخور ونعوي ونجر  
دائمًا بأكل كثيرًا!

Nadine



That sounds great!

Gameela



What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

ماذا عن نهاده هذا الأسبوع يا نادين؟ هل انت مشغولة؟

Nadine



Not really. Do you want to do something together?

ليس تمامًا، هل تريدان ان نفعل شئنا معًا؟

Gameela



Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square.

نعم، دعينا نذهب إلى ذلك المقهى الجديد في منطقتنا. إنه بالقرب من المصايف.

Nadine



Yes, OK. It looks nice and they've got delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

Gameela



Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball twice a week, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson once a week, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics every day after school - she never misses a day! Three times a year, in January, June, and December, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!



تلعب أختي داليا كرة السلة مرتين في الأسبوع، يومي الثلاثاء والخميس. لديها درس الحصار مرة واحدة في الأسبوع، في أيام السبت. كما انها تمارس رياضة الحصار كل يوم بعد المدرسة فهي لا تفوت أي يوم. تبدأ ثلاث مرات في السنة، في يناير ويونيو وديسمبر، تقام مسابقة حصار كبيرة في منطقتنا. داليا تشارك دائمًا!

هذا يا داليا!



## Language Focus

### The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

#### Affirmative Form المصغرات

He/ She/ It + (inf.) + s/ es/ ies ...

eg - He **plays** tennis. - Sara **wants** water.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

visit — visits

eg Mona visits her grandparents on the weekends.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ s, sh, ch, o, x, z

يضاف لها (es):

pass — passes

eg Hamza never **pa**ses the street alone.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) ي حذف

(y) ويضاف لها (ies):

study — studies

eg Samar **studies** English every day.

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) ...

eg - We **visit** our cousins every week. - The children **get** up early.

#### Negative Form المصغرات السالبة

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) ...

We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) ...

eg - Moaz **doesn't** play football. - They **don't** play video games.

#### Yes/No Question الأسئلة بنعم/لا

Question السؤال	Do Does	I/ you/ we/ they he/ she/ it	...? الفعل في المصدر (inf)
-----------------	------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------



Answer الإجابة	Yes, No,	subject (الموضوع)	do / does. don't / doesn't
----------------	-------------	-------------------	-------------------------------

eg Do you like sports?

B: Yes, I do.

eg Does he go to work by taxi?

B: No, he doesn't.



## Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf) " + ... + ...?"
	does	he/ she/ it	

eg A Where do you go in the weekend?

B I often go to the park with my family.

eg A When does the sun come up?

B: The sun comes up in the morning.

## Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My dad (played – p ays – playing – play) football on weekends.
- 2 It (raining – rains – rain – to rain) a lot in this city.
- 3 Doctors (works – working – work – to work) at the hospital.
- 4 Birds (sing – sings – sang – singing) beautiful songs.
- 5 Nancy (wasn't – don't – isn't – doesn't) like spicy food.
- 6 Trees (don't – sn't – didn't – doesn't) grow without water.
- 7 (Do – Is – Was – Does) your brother like playing sports?
- 8 (Does – Is – Do – Are) your friends live in the city?
- 9 When (do – does – did – are) the store open every day?
- 10 How many classes (do – are – does – is) you have today?

## Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف تكرار قبل الفعل (أو بعد الفعل be) نتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

100%

always

90%

usually

70%

often

50%

sometimes

5%

rarely

0%

never

## Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often":

لنسأل عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما باستخدام "How often"؟

Question:

How often + do/ does + subject ( ) + (inf.) ?

Answer: الإجابة:

Subject + adverb of frequency + main verb.

Subject + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

eg How often do you watch TV?

B: I always watch TV at night.

eg How often does he come late for school?

B: He is rarely late for school.

We can use time expressions to talk about how often we repeat the action.

يمكن استخدام تعابير الوقت لشرح عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما.

every day

once a week

twice a month

three times a year

eg - I visit my grandma every week.

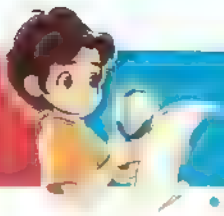
- Omar travels aboard once a year.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- How (often – so – many – much) do you go to the library?
- (What – How – Who – When) often does Nadia play video games?
- I (never – always – rarely – sometimes) have my breakfast before school. I never miss it.
- My mom (always – rarely – often – usually) drinks coffee. She only drinks it once a week.
- It (always – often – never – usually) snows in the summer.
- The train (never – rarely – sometimes – usually) arrives on time. It's rarely late.
- My sister (usually – always – never – often) watches TV at night. She always sleeps early.
- Habiba goes to the gym (one – two – once – every) a week.
- A: How often do you read newspapers?  
B: I (often – every – twice – doesn't) read them every morning.
- My friends (always are – are always – always is – is always) at the park on Fridays.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The team's ..... is on the players' T-shirts.  
a) logo                      b) location                      c) project                      d) center
- 2 The green areas help people enjoy nature and help the .....  
a) wildlife                      b) fish                      c) water                      d) grass
- 3 Aswan is very far. That's a long ..... from here.  
a) river                      b) way                      c) community                      d) forest
- 4 Mini Forest Organization looks after the ..... over time.  
a) people                      b) animals                      c) forests                      d) birds
- 5 They collect ..... about the forests for research.  
a) food                      b) data                      c) trees                      d) links
- 6 Tourists from ..... countries like to visit Egypt every year.  
a) mini                      b) special                      c) foreign                      d) middle

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

effects – foreign – volunteer – middle – local

I am Hassan. I'm a .....(1)..... at the Mini Forest organization. It's an organization that plants areas of trees in the .....(2)..... of cities. We never grow .....(3)..... plants; we always plant trees that grow naturally in the area. We also collect data from every forest we plant. This helps us understand the .....(4)..... of forests on people, wildlife, and the climate of the area.

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 do – How – often – to – go – you – the zoo?

- 2 never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school.

- 3 look – the – over – We – mini forests – after – time.

- 4 grow – our projects – We – never – foreign – in – plants.



# 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 She always ..... (buy) meat for food. القاهرة - إدارة الساحل التعليمية 2024
- 2 My parents usually ..... (listening) to the radio in the morning.
- 3 I don't ..... (likes) watching TV.
- 4 Noha ..... (not eat) too much. She's really thin.
- 5 ..... (Do) your sister have a job?
- 6 How often ..... (do) your teacher give you homework? المنوفية - إدارة الساجور التعليمية 2024
- 7 I ..... (doesn't) often play video games.
- 8 ..... (Do) it often rain?
- 9 I ..... (always) play basketball. I don't play it.
- 10 How ..... (many) do you make lunch? B: Twice a week.
- 11 Yara ..... (never) travels to Cairo. She travels once a month.
- 12 It's ..... (rarely) sunny and hot in the summer.
- 13 Huda ..... (usually is) late for school. البحيرة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
- 14 She ..... (often) eats nuts as a snack. She doesn't like nuts.
- 15 I ..... (eat often) dates as a snack. I love them.

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم اللازم:

- 1 how often do you work in the community garden

- 2 i don t see my school friends on weekends.

## 6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

محتاج  
صفحة  
308

### "Mini Forest"

What is Mini Forest? – Why is Mini Forest important? – What do they plant?



### Reading



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

neighborhood	حي	railway line	خط السكة الحديد	local residents	السكان المحليون
species	فصائل / أنواع	art works	أعمال فنية	theater performance	أداء مسرحي

#### Extra vocabulary

New York	مدينة نيويورك	email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	well	صحة جيدة
apartment	شقة	floor	دور / طابق	view	منظر
project	مشروع	famous	مشهور	noisy	مرعج

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
create	يخلق	created	يهر
miss	يفتقد	missed	يستريح
		pass	relaxed
		relax	

##### Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
can	يستطيع	could	hang out
write	يكتب	wrote	tell
			يتسكع (يتجول)
			يخبر

#### Expressions and Phrases

in parts of the city	في بعض أنحاء المدينة	no one uses now	لا أحد يستخدمها الآن
know about ...	يعرف عن ...	in the 1980s	في الثمانينات
make ... into	يحول	Here is	هنا
How are things ...?	كيف هي الأمور ...?	doesn't taste like ...	لا يبدو طعمه مثل ...

#### Definitions

hang out	يتسكع (يتجول)	spend time with, relax together	قضى الوقت ويستريح معًا
local residents	السكان المحليون	people who live in a neighborhood	ناس الذين يعيشون في الحي
pass through	يمر عبر	go from one place to another	ينتقل من مكان لآخر
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something	نشعر بالحزن لأنه لا يمكنك الحصول على شيء أو رؤيته
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	a road for trains	طريق للقطارات

#### Take care!

- إضافة (s) الجمع إلى التاريخ (1980s) تعبر عن الفترة من (1980) إلى (1989).

e.g. They stopped using the railway in the 1980s.

e.g. I always watch TV at home.

- كلمة (home) قد تعني منزلًا أو وطنًا.

e.g. Egypt is our home country.

## 2. Look and read:



To: samer@email.com

From: waeltawfik@email.com

Subject: Life in New York



Search

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.



New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just hang out with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news,  
Wael

Check

What's Wael's favorite place in New York? .....

SB

2 What is the High Line? .....



**Tip!**

For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the keywords and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer.

سنة لمفردن لصواب العطاء افر لحمل بعينه يؤذ، صبح حظ تحت الكلفاء الرئيسة وانحت عر، الكلفاء بعشائره في

e.g.

Read the email again. Write **T (True)** or **F (False)**. Correct the false sentences in your notebook.

اقرأ البريد الإلكتروني مرة أخرى وأجب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة في دفتر ملاحظاتك.

1 Wael's family lives in a tall building. (T)

2 There aren't many parks in New York. (F)

 There are many parks in New York.

3 Wael lives far from the High Line. (F)

 Wael lives near the High Line.

4 In the past, the High Line was a road. (F)

 In the past, the High Line was a railway line.

5 The High Line is two and a half kilometers long. (T)

6 Wael loves the local food. (F)

 Wael says it's OK.

**Check**

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 To (play - pass - bath - path) through is to go from one place to another.
- 2 To (miss - mess - like - do) is to feel sad you can't have or see something.
- 3 Local (residents - animals - plants - houses) are the people who live in a neighborhood.
- 4 A/An (railway line - apartment - art work - local residents) is a road for trains.
- 5 To (pass through - hang out - miss - create) is to spend time and relax together.



## Story



## 3. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



## Main vocabulary

selfish (adj.)	أناني	giant (adj.)	عملاق	local children	أطفال القرية (السكان المحليون)
spring	فصل الربيع	hole	حفرة	tiny (adj.)	صغير الحجم

## Extra vocabulary

season	فصل / موسم	village	قرية	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
soft (adj.)	ناعم	colorful (adj.)	ملون	bees	نحل
lovely (adj.)	جميل	wall	جائط	empty (adj.)	فارغ
silent (adj.)	صامت	leaves	أوراق الشجر	snow	الثلج
sound	صوت (غير بشري)	sweet (adj.)	حلو	corner	زاوية
little	صغير السن	suddenly	فجأة	branches	فروع

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
share	يشارك	shared		cover	يغطي	covered	
arrive	يصل	arrived		laugh	يضحك	laughed	
climb up	يتسلق	climbed up		start	يبدأ	started	
happen	يحدث	happened		appear	يظهر	appeared	

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
build	يبني	built		fall	يسقط	fell	
understand	يفهم	understood		feel	يشعر	felt	
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up		hear	يسمع	heard	
sit	يجلس	sat		stand	يقف	stood	

## Expressions and Phrases

on their way home	في طريقهم إلى المنزل	make ... happy	تجعل (شخصًا ما) سعيدًا
turn brown	يتحول للون البني	fall from	يسقط من
fly away	يطير بعيدًا	What is wrong?	ما الأمر؟
look out of the window	ينظر للخارج من النافذة	come back through	يعود عبر
too small to (inf.) ...	صغير جدًا أن يقوم بـ ...	fly up into	يطير للأعلى إلى

## Take care!

e.g. - Her voice was sad on the phone.

- The bird had a beautiful sound.

- (voice) تستخدم للصوت البشري.

- (sound) للصوت غير البشري.

## The Selfish Giant

## العملاق الأناني



## 4. Look and read:

## انظر واقرأ:

## The beginning

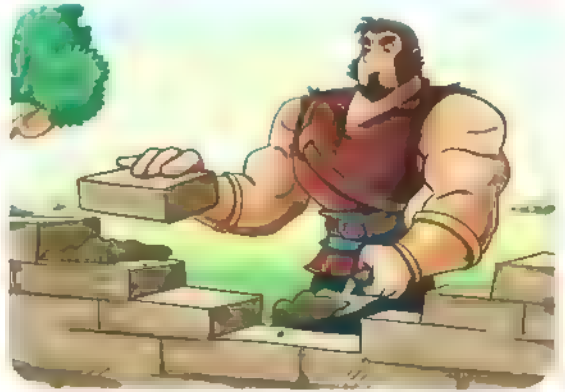
In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers, and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.



في قرية، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة رائعة، في حديقته أشجار طويلة و زهور جميلة وعشب أخضر ناعم. هناك طيور ملونة تعرد على الأشجار وبحل على السناجب. بعد ظهر كل يوم، في طريق عودتهم إلى المنزل من المدرسة، يأتي أطفال القرية للعب في حديقة العملاق. الحديقة جميلة دائما يجعرو الأطفال سعداء.

## The middle

But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away. Spring arrives



in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong?

لكن العملاق الأناني لا يريد مشاركة حديقته، لذلك في أحد الأيام قام ببناء حدار كبير حولها. الآن الأطفال لا يأتون إلى هناك للعب. يمر الأيام والحديقة دائماً فارغة وصامتة. سطاء، تحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار، ثم يعطى الثلج الحديقة ويظهر جميع الطيور والحل بعيداً. يصل الربيع إلى القرية، لكن لا يزال الشتاء موجوداً في حديقته العملاق. يعطى الثلج كل شيء. لعملاق لا يفهم. فعنده ما يكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع. ما الامر؟



Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

ثم في صباح أحد الأيام يستيقظ الجان ويستمع لصوت جميل. كان في شجرة صغيرة خارج البستان يسمعه صوت أطفال يضحكون.



### The end

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting under the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

يخرج الجان من نافذة غرفته ويلاحظ أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب في حائط البستان. الآن هم يجلسون تحت الأشجار. الأوراق على الأشجار خضراء مرة أخرى والزهرة تفتح حولهم. الجان يشعر بالسعادة لأنه يرى أن بستانه ينمو مرة أخرى.



But in one corner of the garden, it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says, "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."

لكن في أحد أركان الحدائق، لا يزال الشتاء. يرى الجان صبيًا صغيرًا يقف هناك. إنه صغير جدًا ليرسله إلى شجرة. فجأة يدرك الجان كل شيء. يقول: «الآن أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع. أعتقد إنه لأنني كنت أنانيًا بشأن بستانتي». يخرج ويساعد الصبي الصغير على تسلق شجرة. فجأة، تفتح كل الأوراق على الشجرة وتقفير وتقفير وتقفير من أغصانها. تبدأ الطيور في الغناء. يقول الجان: «عندما لا تكون أنانيًا، تحدث أشياء جيدة».

### The moral of the story

When you're not selfish, good things happen.

### Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 There's a giant that lives in a (city - desert - village - town).
- 2 The Giant was (friendly - selfish - nice - bad) about his garden.



## Pronunciation



5. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



/s/

sand رمال

grass حشائش

sick مريض

so لذلك

pass (v.) يمر / ينجح

mouse فأر

sing (v.) يغني

seed بذرة

stalk ساق النبات

bus أتوبيس

soft ناعم

selfish أناني

six ستة

sunset وقت الغروب

sky سماء

sunny مشمس

/θ/

thumb إبهام

think يفكر

thick كثيف

throw يلقي / يرمي

path طريق

mouth فم

thing شيء

thanks شكرًا

thirsty عطشان

bath حمام

through عبر / خلال

thin نحيف

thunder رعد

threaten يهدد



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع و استمع د ب ح و ا لاجد صحتها : (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The giant didn't want to share his .....  
 a) money      b) house      c) garden      d) clothes
- 2 The giant built a ..... around his garden.  
 a) wall      b) ship      c) room      d) roof
- 3 When the children came back, the leaves on the trees are ..... again.  
 a) yellow      b) red      c) blue      d) green
- 4 When you're not ....., good things happen.  
 a) good      b) nice      c) selfish      d) sweet

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

الاجد الصحتها :

- 1 We live in an apartment on the tenth .....  
 a) flower      b) flour      c) floor      d) flood
- 2 The selfish giant doesn't want anyone to ..... his garden.  
 a) love      b) share      c) pick      d) grow
- 3 The park is a good place to hang ..... with your friends.  
 a) in      b) out      c) up      d) to
- 4 The roof is the ..... of a building.  
 a) side      b) left      c) top      d) bottom
- 5 New York is very noisy, but Alexandria is much .....  
 a) bigger      b) smaller      c) quieter      d) faster
- 6 There's a ..... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.  
 a) minaret      b) souk      c) palace      d) railway line

المنوفية - إدارة الباجور الإنجليزية 2024

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

noisy – restaurants – miss – night – project

I live in New York, but I used to live in Alexandria. New York is very .....(1).....  
 Alexandria is much quieter at .....(2)..... The food also doesn't taste like the  
 food at home. There are lots of different .....(3)..... here in New York. But the  
 restaurants in Alexandria are much better. I think the food tastes more delicious in  
 Egypt. I .....(4)..... our food so much!



## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long, and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just hang out with your friends.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People stopped using the old railway from ..... to .....  
a) 1960 – 1969   b) 1970 – 1979   c) 1980 – 1989   d) 1990 – 1999
- 2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a) restaurant   b) theater   c) class   d) High Line
- 3 The park is ..... long.  
a) 2.2 kms   b) 2.3 kms   c) 2.5 kms   d) 2.6 kms

### Answer the following questions:

- 4 How many species of plants are there in the High Line?  
.....
- 5 Summarize the passage in two sentences.  
.....

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 Our – on – sixteenth – apartment – is – the – floor.  
.....
- 2 passes – High Line – through – The – neighborhood – my.  
.....
- 3 all – New York – noisy – very – the time – is.  
.....
- 4 a wonderful – has – The – garden – giant.  
.....

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

- 1 How are things in alexandria  
.....
- 2 new york has a lot of green spaces.  
.....

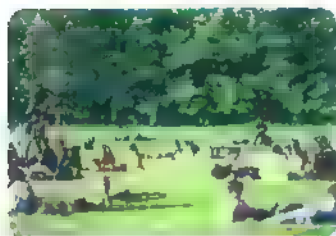


1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary



The Meadows

الحديقة المروج



Edinburgh Castle



porridge

### Extra vocabulary

Scotland	اسكتلندا	friendly	ودود	called	يُدعى / يُسمى
famous (adj.)	مشهور	warm	دافئ	especially	خصوصًا
Scottish	أسكتلندي	better	أفضل	news	أخبار
bowl	سلطانية / وعاء	oats	الشوفان	informal (adj.)	غير رسمي
infographic	مخطط معلومات بياني	arrow	سهم	caption	وصف / تعليق

### Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet	يقابل	stick	يلزق
	met		stuck

### Expressions and Phrases

really interesting	مثير للاهتمام حقًا	just next to	قريب جدًا من	really cool	رائع حقًا
on the third floor	في الطابق الثالث	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر	over the trees	فوق الأشجار
in the distance	على مسافة بعيدة	OK (okay)	تمام / على ما يرام	miss about	يفتقد / يشاق إلى
write back soon	اكتب لي قريبًا	the news from home	الأخبار من الوطن	friendly in tone	بطريقة ودية

### Important sentences

- \* Donia is in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hany. دنيا في أسكتلندا مع ماما وبابا وهاني.
- \* They are in an apartment next to a park called The Meadows. هم في شقة بجوار حديقة تسمى "المروج".
- \* In the distance, they can see the famous Edinburgh Castle. على مسافة بعيدة، يمكنهم رؤية قلعة إدنبره الشهيرة.
- \* Donia likes Scotland, but she misses the weather and food in Egypt. دنيا تحب أسكتلندا لكنها تفتقد الطقس والطعام في مصر.
- \* The people in Scotland are nice and she has a lot of new friends at school. الناس في أسكتلندا لطيفون ولدى دنيا الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد في المدرسة.



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From:	Donia@qwikmail.com
	Laila@egyptmail.com
	My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila, مرحبا ليلي

How are things with you? كيف هي الأمور معك؟

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too!

إن حير في سكوتلند، مع أمي ووالدي، إنها سيرة بلاغتهم حقا

نوار حديقة رابعة بالفعل تسمى «The Meadows». إنها في الطابق الثالث ويقع الحديقة على الجانب الآخر من

«» هناك نسبا غلاية بعدة على الأشجار، يستخدم أساس الصورة كثير بممارسة الرياضة ومشاهدة الأصدقاء، لذلك هناك دائما ما يمكن رؤيته

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!

أحب أسكتلندا، لكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي أفقدها في مصر - الطقس الدافئ، المشمس (لا يكون الجو حارًا هنا أبدًا) وخاصة الطعام! الطعام

الأسكتلندي جيد لكن الطعام المصري أفضل! على سبيل المثال، لتناول الإفطار، ناكل الكثير من الأسكتلندي العصيدة. عادة ما يصنعونها

بالحليب، ويضعون عليها أحيانًا العسل، لكن أنا فعلا لا أحبها. افتقد حقا إفطاري المصري المفصل، الفول المدمس!

The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Donia

هنا لصومون ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد في المدرسة. عالتا ما اذهب إلى منزل صديقتي رونا بعد المدرسة وتذكر معا أحيانا شاهد



## How to write an informal email كيف تكتب بريداً إلكترونياً غير رسمي

\* An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتب إلى أصدقائك.

\* An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

كما أن يكون البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي ودود في أسلوبه، ويستخدم لغة غير رسمية - يبتعد عن صياغة رسمية.

**Tip!** Make sure you type your friend's email address correctly or they won't receive the email!

From	: إيميل الراسل
To	: إيميل المرسل إليه
Subject	: الموضوع
Hi Dear	<p>Greetings الحيات</p> <p>How are things with you? How are you and your family? I'm happy to write this e-mail to you.</p> <p>Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية</p> <p>موضوع الإيميل</p> <p>See you soon. Lots of love,</p> <p>Closing phrase عبارة ختامية</p>

Write an informal email of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend Mai in Egypt telling her about your new life in China. Your name is Amira and your email address is amira@school.com. Your friend's email address is mai@school.com.

From	: amira@school.com
To	: mai@school.com
Subject	: My new life in China
<p>Hi Mai,</p> <p>How are things with you? I'm finally in China with Mom, Dad, and Hana. Our apartment is in the city center. It's on the third floor. The Chinese food is OK, but the Egyptian food is better. I miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! I also miss the warm and sunny weather in Egypt. The people here are nice, and I have a lot of new friends at school. Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.</p> <p>Lots of love, Amira</p>	



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 ..... people eat porridge for breakfast.  
a) Egyptian      b) Scottish      c) Chinese      d) American
- 2 We can see the famous Edinburgh ..... from the window of my apartment.  
a) Park      b) Hospital      c) Castle      d) School
- 3 Sarah is always kind and ..... Everyone likes her.  
a) noisy      b) friendly      c) informal      d) angry
- 4 The porridge is made with ..... and milk.  
a) flour      b) wheat      c) oats      d) mango
- 5 Laila misses the warm, ..... weather in Egypt.  
a) snowy      b) cold      c) frozen      d) sunny
- 6 Laila's apartment is in front of a ..... called "The Meadows".  
a) park      b) hospital      c) castle      d) school

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

miss – apartment – nice – weather – warm

I am Adam. I'm in Scotland with my family. We are staying in an ..... (1) ..... on the sixth floor. I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I ..... (2) ..... about Egypt – the warm, sunny ..... (3) ..... I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! The people here are ..... (4) ..... and I have a lot of new friends at school.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن أسئلته:

My name is Hana. I'm finally in Scotland. Our apartment is on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and making friends, so there's always something to see there. Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast, a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it!

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The apartment is on the ..... floor.  
a) 1<sup>st</sup>                      b) 2<sup>nd</sup>                      c) 3<sup>rd</sup>                      d) 4<sup>th</sup>
- 2 Egyptian food is ..... than Scottish food.  
a) worse                      b) smaller                      c) better                      d) farther
- 3 A lot of Scottish people eat .....  
a) ful medames                      b) porridge                      c) milk                      d) honey

## Answer the following questions:

- 4 Where is Hana? .....
- 5 Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....



## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 Egyptian – ful medames – favorite – M – breakfast – is.

- 2 eat – breakfast – Scottish – for – porridge – people.

- 3 have – friends – school – a lot of – I – at.

- 4 is – Our – the – center – in – apartment – city.



## Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

-I'm finally in scotland



Write an informal email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Sally to tell her about your new life in Scotland. Your name is Sarah and your email address is sarah@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sally@gmail.com:

محتاج عينة  
صياغة  
208

اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا من 50 كلمة إلى صديقتك سالي لتخبرها عن حياتك الجديدة في اسكتلندا:

Scottish people – cool park – eat porridge

From :	.....
To :	.....
Subject :	.....
<p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>	



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

apartment block	عمارة سكنية	roof	سطح
natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
harvest	يحصد	plant	يزرع
community garden	الحديقة المجتمعية	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حي	organic	عضوي
dates	بلح	lettuce	خس
local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة

## Lesson (2)

logo	شعار (علامة مسجلة للدعاية)	mini	مصغر
forest	غابة	organization	منظمة
nature	الطبيعة	effect	تأثير
aid	مساعدة	urban	حضرى
location	موقع	foreign	أجنبي
data	بيانات	research	بحث
project	مشروع	wildlife	الحياة البرية

## Lesson (3)

railway line	خط السكة الحديد	local residents	السكان المحليون
species	فصائل	art works	أعمال فنية
theater performance	أداء مسرحي	floor	طابق / دور
selfish	أناني	giant	عملاق
hole	حفرة	village	قرية
thumb	الإبهام	path	مسار
thick	كثيف	branches	فروع الشجرة

## Lessons (4 & 5)

Scotland	أسكتلندا	friendly	ودود
Scottish	أسكتلندي	news	أخبار
bowl	سلطانية / وعاء	oats	الشوفان
informal	غير رسمي	castle	قلعة
porridge	عصيدة	famous	مشهور

## Language Focus

### Adverbs of frequency:

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

e.g.

100%

always

90%

usually

70%

often

50%

sometimes

5%

rarely

0%

never

### Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often":

How often + do/ does + subject (الشخص) + (inf.) المصير (inf.) ؟

Subject + do/ does + frequency + main verb.

Subject + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

e.g. A: How often do you watch TV?

B: I always watch TV at night.

e.g. A: How often does he come late for school?

B: He is rarely late for school.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

### Lesson 1

يزرع	مبنى سكنى
سطح	سماد طبيعى
مواد كيميائية	يحصص
حديقة مجتمعية	فلفل
بصل	خس
ليمون	بلح (تمر)

### Lesson 2

شعار	مصغر
غابة	منظمة
الطبيعة	تأثيرات
موقع	بيانات
حضرى	أجنبى
متطوعون	بحث
الريف	مناخ

### Lesson 3

الحى	الطابق / الدور
منظر	فصائل / أنواع
السكان المحليون	أداء مسرحى
أنانى	علاق
إيهام	كثيف
يرمى	يمر
أعمال فنية	شقة
مزعج	فروع

### Lessons 4 & 5

أسكتلندا	ودود
مشهور	دافىء
خصوصاً	أخبار
غير رسمى	الشوفان
سلطانية / وعاء	أفضل

# WRITING TIME

نجميعه لأهم  
موضوعات  
الوحدة

لكن تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write about "Mini Forest":

- Mini Forest is (تعريف المنظمة).
- Mini Forest helps (فوائد المنظمة).
- We plant (نوع النباتات التي يتم زراعتها).
- We need (احتياجات المنظمة).

## "Mini forest"

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. Mini Forest helps people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest Organization.

## How to write about a project to create green spaces:

- (اسم البلد) is in (اسم المشروع) ...
- Years ago, (اسم المشروع) was (تاريخ المشروع) ..
- Now it's (تحويل المكان) ...
- It is (طول المشروع) long ..
- When you walk through it, you can (أنشطة داخل المشروع)

## "Create green spaces"

The High Line is in New York. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long. When you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, or just hang out with your friends.

## How to write an informal email:

- Start with an opening phrase.
- Ask about the reader's health/news.
- Use informal expressions.
- End with a friendly closing phrase.

From : nadia@gmail.com  
To : nahla@gmail.com  
Subject : My visit to Paris

Hello Nahla,  
How are things in Alexandria?  
I'm spending a great time in Paris. I got a family ticket to Disneyland. I'm really excited. I went to the Louvre Museum, but guess what! It was pretty boring. People here are nice and the food is yummy, too  
Write to me soon to tell me your news.  
Lots of love.  
Nadia

### 1 Complete the sentences with the words and phrases from the box:

chemicals – harvest – local residents – natural fertilizer – plant – railway line

- 1 Early spring is the best season to ..... seeds in the ground.
- 2 You can use old coffee as a ..... for plants in your garden.
- 3 There's a ..... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.
- 4 I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no .....
- 5 The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people ..... rice there every year.
- 6 The people who work in the community garden are all .....

### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.  
.....
- 2 always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats.  
.....
- 3 the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?  
.....
- 4 rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.  
.....

### 3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

- 1 We don't like fish at all. We (often – never) eat it.
- 2 Date palm trees (usually – never) produce fruit.
- 3 My aunt lives with us, so I (often – rarely) speak to her.
- 4 I (sometimes – never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
- 5 Hani (rarely – often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.



## Listening

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

6

- 1 Lara ..... wakes up at six o'clock.  
a) always      b) often      c) usually      d) never
- 2 She sometimes eats a ..... at nine o'clock.  
a) noodles      b) sandwich      c) popcorn      d) candies
- 3 She ..... watches TV after school.  
a) often      b) sometimes      c) rarely      d) daily
- 4 She usually does her homework at ..... o'clock.  
a) 4      b) 5      c) 6      d) 7



## Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 The ..... giant doesn't want to share his garden.  
a) happy      b) kind      c) selfish      d) helpful
- 2 Organic food has no .....  
a) harvest      b) fertilizers      c) chemicals      d) invitations
- 3 The ..... will soon reach our town, so we will travel by train.  
a) airport      b) railway line      c) pavement      d) park
- 4 We climbed onto the ..... of a building to get the injured bird.  
a) roof      b) street      c) flat      d) road

البيضة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

4

railway – children – residents – species – trains

The famous High Line is in New York City. The High Line was a ..... (1) ..... line. In 1980s, the ..... (2) ..... stopped using it, so the local ..... (3) ..... decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. The railway is now a green space with more than 500 ..... (4) ..... of plants and trees.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We ..... grow foreign plants in our projects.  
a) always      b) never      c) usually      d) often
- 2 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the .....  
a) small forest      b) organization      c) trees      d) wildlife
- 3 We need more ..... to join the Mini Forest Organization.  
a) students      b) volunteers      c) foreigners      d) players

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What is the Mini Forest? .....
- 5 Summarize the benefits of the organization for people and nature.



### Writing

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً: 3

1 does – How – eat – she – often – dates?

2 want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?

3 always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats. الدقهلية - إدارة السلاوين التعليمية 2024

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 2

1 They ..... (play usually) computer games on Sundays. القاهرة - إدارة الفروع التعليمية 2024

2 How ..... (many) do you make lunch? B: Twice a week.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 1

Where does Mariam go on fridays

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

محتاج علامة  
صفحة  
308

### "Our community garden"

What is the community garden? – What do you grow there?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress  
★★★★★

Study again

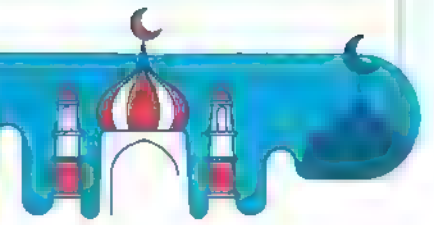
Practice more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

### 1 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

natural – roof – community – environment – clean

Mai : What's a .....garden?

Hana : It's a big green space on a .....

Mai : What kind of fertilizers do they use?

Hana : They use ..... fertilizers.

Mai : Do community gardens help the .....?

Hana : Yes, they help ..... the air.

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A (How much – How many – How often) do you play tennis?  
B: Twice a week.
- 2 We (doesn't – don't – aren't) water the plants in the morning.
- 3 I (sometimes – usually – never) watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.
- 4 I never (eats – eating – eat) unhealthy foods.
- 5 Does she often (play – plays – played) the piano?
- 6 We only use (snow – natural fertilizer – railway line) in our garden.
- 7 When will you (harvest – make – read) the crops?
- 8 The effects of this (organic – chemical – natural fertilizer) are dangerous.
- 9 I live with my family in a modern (railway – apartment – roof) overlooking the sea.
- 10 We can (buy – plant – cook) those flowers in the garden.

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملا صحيحة:

1 peppers – They – tomatoes – plant – and – usually.

2 mother – do – How often – help – you – your?

3 milk – always – He – the morning – drinks – in.

4 tall – The – very – is – apartment block.

5 city – Do – the – you – grow – in – food?



- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, and write about people's personalities.

make clear what people, places, and things he/she's talking about using who, which, and where.

describe his/her own and other people's feelings.

say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.

write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.

make a leaflet about his/her school.

### Did you know?

The way you move gives other people information about your *personality*. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

### Find out!

A person's personality is how they think and *behave*. People are born with *styles* of their personalities, but their personalities develop and change over the years.





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



### Main vocabulary

nervous (قلق)	متوتر / عصبي	shy (خجول)	خجول	worried (قلق)	قلق
clever (ذكي)	ذكي	polite (مؤدب)	مؤدب	messy (فوضوي)	فوضوي
organized (منظم)	منظم	intelligent (ذكي)	ذكي	calm (هادئ)	هادئ
personality (شخصية)	شخصية	relaxed (مسترخ)	مسترخ / هادئ	funny (مضحك / مرح)	مضحك / مرح

### Extra vocabulary

friendly (adj.) (ودود)	ودود	a bit (قليلاً)	قليلاً / إلى حد ما	break (فترة الاستراحة / الفسحة)	فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة)
textbooks (الكتب الدراسية)	الكتب الدراسية	extra (إضافي)	إضافي	copy (نسخة)	نسخة
worksheets (ورق تدريبات)	ورق تدريبات	helpful (متعاون)	متعاون	quiet (هادئ)	هادئ
carefully (بحرص)	بحرص	correctly (شكل صحيح)	شكل صحيح	respect (احترام)	احترام
tidy (adj.) (مرتب)	مرتب	careful (adj.) (حريص)	حريص	bedroom floor (أرضية حجرة النوم)	أرضية حجرة النوم

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
worry (يقلق)	worried	share (يتشارك)	shared

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
show (يعرض)	showed	meet (يقابل)	met

### Expressions and Phrases

look worried (يبدو قلقاً)	يبدو قلقاً	a bit nervous (متوتر قليلاً)	متوتر قليلاً
get to know (يتعرف على)	يتعرف على	take you around (يأخذك في جولة بأثناء المكان)	يأخذك في جولة بأثناء المكان
at break (أثناء الفسحة)	أثناء الفسحة	welcome to ... (مرحباً بك في ...)	مرحباً بك في ...
I'm not sure. (لست متأكداً)	لست متأكداً	a copy of (نسخة من)	نسخة من
come on (تعال / هيا)	تعال / هيا	school work (الواجب المدرسي)	الواجب المدرسي
show respect (يُظهر الاحترام)	يُظهر الاحترام	make friends (يكون أصدقاء)	يكون أصدقاء
take turns (يتبادل الأدوار)	يتبادل الأدوار	look like (يشبه / يبدو)	يشبه / يبدو



## Definitions

friendly	nice to others, helpful	لطيف مع الآخرين، متعاون
shy	worried about talking to people, quiet	قلق من التحدث إلى الناس، هادئ
clever	intelligent, good at school work	ذكي، جيد في العمل المدرسي
polite	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	يتحدث بحرص وبشكل صحيح، يظهر الاحترام
messy	not tidy or organized	غير مرتب أو منظم
organized	tidy, careful	مرتب، حريص
nervous	not calm, worried	غير هادئ، قلق

## Important sentences - جمل هامة

- \* Hazem is new at school and feels a bit nervous.  
حازم جديد في المدرسة ويشعر بالتوتر قليلاً.
- \* Asser is friendly and helps Hazem get to know the school.  
أسر ودود ويساعد حازم في التعرف على المدرسة.
- \* Basel is clever and helps Hazem with his homework.  
باسل ذكي ويساعد حازم في واجباته المدرسية.
- \* Hazem is a bit messy and doesn't know the books he already has.  
حازم فوضوي بعض الشيء ولا يعرف الكتب التي لديه بالفعل.
- \* Basel is organized and shares his books with Hazem.  
باسل منظم ويشارك كتبه مع حازم.

## Check

## Choose the correct answer:

- Salma is nice to others. She's (calm – friendly – shy – sad).
- I'm (shy – messy – clever – nice). I worry about talking to people.
- The living room is very (messy – polite – nervous – shy).
- He always shows respect to his grandmother. He's very (bad – excited – calm – polite).
- I play in the playground at (break – classroom – hospital – station).
- Come (away – for – on – by), Ola. I'll show you where the library is.





2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



**How does Hazem feel today? Why? كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟ لماذا؟**



Hi, Hazem! I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

مرحبًا حازم! أنا اسر. تبدو قلقًا. هل كل شيء بخير؟

**Hazem**



Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

اهلا، اسرا! إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.



**Asser**

Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

لا تقلق، جميعنا ودودون بلعبة. يمكنني أن أساعدك في التعرف على المدرسة.

**Hazem**



Really! Can you?



Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

بالأكيد. يمكنني أن أأخذك في جولة وأريك مكان فصلك وأنقى معك في فتره الاستراحة! دعنا نقابل بعضًا من أصدقائي. انظروا! إنه باسل. أهلا، با!

**Basel**



Hi Asser!



Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

حازم هه، باسل. إنه ذكي جدًا وحيد في الرياضيات. يمكنك أن تساله إذا كنت بحاجة إلى أي مساعدة في واجب المنزل! باسل، هذا حازم. إنه يبدأ الدراسة هه اليوم.



Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

اهلاً، حازم. مرحباً بك في مدرستنا.

Basel



Asser

He's so polite!

Thanks! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

Basel



Hazem

I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

لست متأكداً. لدى الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في المنزل ولكنني فوضوي بعض الشيء. لست متأكداً من الكتب المدرسية التي أملكها بالفعل.

We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

Basel



يمكننا مشاركة كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية من أوراق التدريبات ...



Hazem

Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!

رائع! أنت منظم جداً. شكراً، بازل!

Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.

Asser



نعال، سأريك أين يوجد فصل العلوم.

### Language Notes

1 To make suggestions:

لتقديم الاقتراحات:

Let's + (inf.) المصدر ..... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Let's go meet our friends.

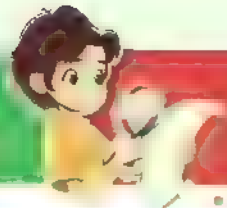
2 To introduce people:

لتقديم الأشخاص:

This is + اسم الشخص

e.g. This is Basel.

# Practice



## Lesson 1

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Mazen moved to a new school last .....  
a) week      b) month      c) year      d) weekend
- 2 Mazen was very ..... because he didn't know anyone.  
a) polite      b) kind      c) friendly      d) shy
- 3 Malek showed Mazen where the ..... were.  
a) teachers      b) classrooms      c) books      d) friends
- 4 Ali helped Mazen with the ..... homework.  
a) Arabic      b) English      c) math      d) science

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My sister is tidy and careful. She's very .....  
a) calm      b) nervous      c) messy      d) organized
- 2 Omar is ..... He's nice to others and helpful.  
a) friendly      b) nervous      c) shy      d) clever
- 3 She is a ..... girl. She is good at school work. ابحيرة - إدارة المدرسين التعليمية 2024  
a) clever      b) shy      c) messy      d) nervous
- 4 Salma is never ..... She is calm and relaxed. SB  
a) polite      b) funny      c) nervous      d) helpful
- 5 Asser helps new students get to know the school. He is really .....  
a) relaxed      b) worried      c) helpful      d) careful
- 6 I have a lot of books in my room everywhere, I'm a bit .....  
a) shy      b) messy      c) calm      d) happy

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at – messy – personality – organized – helpful

I'm Ola. I live with my family in a big house. Everyone in my family has a different .....(1)..... I'm very friendly. I'm nice to others and .....(2)..... My parents are very .....(3)..... and careful. They are tidy. My sister Omnia is very clever. She's intelligent and good .....(4)..... school work.



**Read the text and answer the questions:**

My name is Omar. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy because it was his first day at school. I showed him our classroom because we're all friendly. I helped him with the textbooks. I shared my book with him, and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) teachers at school                      b) helping new students  
 c) cleaners at school                      d) school subjects
- 2 Ali was nervous and ..... because it was his first day at school.  
 a) excited                      b) tidy                      c) shy                      d) calm
- 3 The underlined word "friendly" is similar to .....  
 a) excited                      b) tidy                      c) shy                      d) good

**Answer the following questions:**

- a How does Omar help new students at his school?

.....

- b What did Omar share with Ali?

.....

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

- 1 nervous – I – shy – feel – and – a bit.

.....

- 2 share – can – today – we – books – my.

.....

- 3 neighbors – they – and – are – friendly – helpful.

دمياط - إدارة لروضة انعمية 2024

.....

- 4 have – Do – all – you – books – your?

.....

**Punctuate the following**

- 1 basel is clever and good at math

.....

- 2 My friend nadine is friendly kind, and funny.

.....



**We are proud of our school!** نحن فخورون بمدرستنا!



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

building	مبنى	laboratory	معمل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب (في المعمل)	court	ملعب	spaceship	سفينة الفضاء

### Extra vocabulary

website	موقع إلكتروني	modern	حديث	main	رئيسي
west	غربي	playground	ملعب	playing field	ساحة للعب
benches	مقاعد ثابتة	water fountain	نافورة مياه	desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبي
plus	بالإضافة إلى	tablet	حاسوب لوحي (تابليت)	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
physical education	تربية بدنية	department	قسم	fantasy	خيالي
TV series	مسلسل تلفزيوني	planet	كوكب	humans	البشر
alive (adj.)	على قيد الحياة	ostrich	نعام	pharmacy	صيدلية

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
contact يتواصل	contacted	borrow يستعير	borrowed
return يعود	returned	decide يقرر	decided

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sit يجلس	sat	hide يختبئ	hid
run يجري (يدير)	ran	find يجد	found

### Expressions and Phrases

proud of فخور بـ	tourist information website موقع استعلامات سياحي	do experiments يجري تجارب
open area منطقة مفتوحة	run after-school sports clubs يدير/ يتابع النوادي الرياضية بعد المدرسة	five-a-side football كرة القدم الخماسية
popular with معروف لـ	of all age groups من جميع الفئات العمرية	take place يحدث
look for يبحث عن		

### Take care!

IT → information technology

gym → gymnasium

e.g. El Fouad School

لاحظ الاختصارات:

تكنولوجيا المعلومات

صالة اللعب الرياضية

أسماء الأماكن المشهورة والاختصارات تبدأ بحرف كبير.



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الصفحة الرئيسية

معلومات عن الصفحة

تواصل معنا

El Fouad School

Home

About

Contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

مرحباً بكم في مدرسة الفؤاد، المكان الذي نفخر به. نحن فخورون ببنائنا الجديدة والحديثة ونسعدكم بفتحها لكم. يرجى دراسة الخريطة، وتعرف على مباني المدرسة وما نستخدمها لأغراضها.

### 1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.



مبنى أحمد زويل: هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول دراسية واثنين من المختبرات الجديدة. هذه المختبرات تحتوي على جميع المعدات التي تحتاجها الفصول لأغراض التجارب.

### 2 The West Court

This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

الملعب العربي: هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة حيث يقضي الطلاب وقت فراغهم. هناك ملعب وساحة ألعاب. هناك أيضاً مقاعد للجلوس تحت الأشجار وبئر ماء. يمكن للأطفال أيضاً زراعة النباتات مع السيد مهدي. إنه المعلم الذي يساعد في الحديقة.



### 3 The IT Building

This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their information technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.



مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات: هذا هو المبنى حيث يمكنك أن تجد قصور الكمبيوتر لدينا بأمر

الطلاب. لدينا أكثر من 50 حاسوب مكتبي، بالإضافة إلى أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وأجهزة

و.جهاز يمكن الطلاب استعارتها.

### 4 The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department), and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



قاعة الألعاب الرياضية 2024. نستخدمها للرياضة البدنية، كرة السلة، كرة اليد، والجمباز.

وس الرياضة البدنية هناك بعض المعلمين الذين يولون إدارة النوادي الرياضية بعد المدرسة هنا أيضا، مثل كرة القدم الخماسية (الأستاذة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية) والتennis (الأستاذة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية).

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

«ووندا لاند» هو مسلسل تلفزيوني خيالي يغطي بشعبية بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه ممتع لأنه يحدث في المستقبل على كوكب اسمه «ووندا». إنه عالم حيثما يعيش الناس لأن كوكب الأرض أصبح الآن حارًا جدًا.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring. He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship which is traveling to Earth.

السلسلة تحكي قصة فتى اسمه فري الذي يريد العودة إلى الأرض للعثور على عائلته. فري فتى ذكي، هادئ، يجد الحياة على ووندا ممملة. ليس لديه الكثير من الأصدقاء، لكنه يعتقد أن عائلته قد تكون لا تزال على قيد الحياة، لذلك يقرر أن يختبئ على سفينة فضاء متجهة إلى الأرض.

بصحة في الأرض

The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited to see what happens next!

المشكلة أنه لا يعلم حق أم والديه، ومن المحتمل ألا يجدهما. أنا متشوق لأرى ما سيحدث فيما بعد!

### Check

Choose the correct answer:

- We use the (gymnasium – laborator es – brary – classroom) for basketball and handball.
- We do (sports – housework – homework – experiments) at the laboratories.
- There is a water (equipment – ser es – founta n – f e d) in front of my house.



## Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use relative pronouns "who, which, and where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات حول شخص أو شيء أو مكان محدد.

## who

We use "who" to talk about people.

نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشخاص.

eg Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.



## which

We use "which" to talk about things.

نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشياء.

eg These are the shoes which I wear to school.



## where

We use "where" to talk about places.

eg The gym is a place where we do physical education.



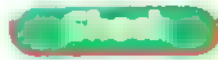
1 لا تكرر الاسم في الجملة بعد استخدام ضمير الوصل  
This is Mrs Mona. Mrs Mona teaches us English.

= This is Mrs Mona who teaches us English.

2 نحل ضمائر الوصل محل الاسماء المفردة والجمع

eg The book which I read was interesting.

These are the books which I read yesterday.



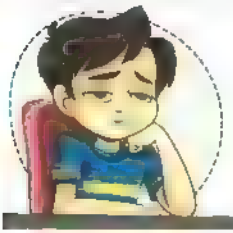
## Choose the correct answer:

- 1 My sister is the girl (where – which – when – who) won the race.
- 2 This is the beach (where – which – when – who) we spend the summer.
- 3 This dog is the animal (where – which – when – who) I bought last week.
- 4 Ali is the boy (where – which – who – where) is wearing a red shirt.
- 5 Mona's toy is the toy (who – which – when – where) makes a loud noise.
- 6 This is the house (where – which – when – who) my grandma lives.
- 7 Mr Ahmed is the teacher (who – who – when – which) wears glasses.
- 8 My uncle planted the tree (where – when – which – who) grows apples.
- 9 My friend Omar lives in the same street (where – who – when – which) I live.
- 10 My uncle is the man (where – who – when – which) sells flowers.

**-ed adjectives**

We use “-ed” adjectives to describe how a person feels.

e.g.



He is bored.

excited

محمس

Adel feels excited today.

tired

مريض

Habiba looks tired.

interested

مهتم

Nader is interested in history.

surprised

مفاجئ

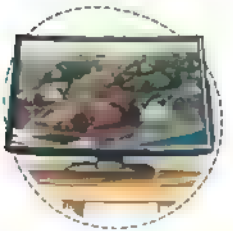
She was surprised to see me.

**-ing adjectives**

We use “-ing” adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم لصفات التي تسبب لنا المشاعر. -ing يوصف الأشخاص، الأماكن، أو الأشياء التي تسبب لنا المشاعر.

e.g.



The TV series is really interesting.

exciting

مثير

It was exciting to finally meet.

tiring

معبث

It was a tiring trip.

surprising

مفاجئ

They prepared for a surprising party.

boring

ممل

What a boring movie!

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 1 The scary movie made me feel (scared – scare – scaring – scares).
- 2 I was (amuse – amused – amuses – amusing) when I was watching the funny clown.
- 3 Sitting on the beach was (relax – relaxing – relaxes – relaxed).
- 4 Nour was (excite – excited – exciting – excites) to buy a new pet.
- 5 I didn't plan for the trip. It was (surprising – surprised – surprise – surprises).
- 6 The warm bed made Mona feel (relaxes – relax – relaxing – relaxed).
- 7 It's (tire – tiring – tired – tires) to climb up a mountain.
- 8 Habiba never watches cartoons. They make her feel (bore – bores – boring – bored).
- 9 It was (annoy – annoys – annoyed – annoying) to listen to such loud music all night.
- 10 I was (excite – excites – exciting – excited) to go on a rollercoaster in the theme park.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Students play sports in the .....  
a) playground    b) laboratory    c) fountain    d) department
- 2 Scientists use special ..... in their research.  
a) maps    b) equipment    c) desktops    d) courts
- 3 We sit on the ..... when we go to the park.  
a) trees    b) desks    c) benches    d) gym
- 4 I exercise in the ..... near my house.  
a) department    b) lake    c) gymnasium    d) website
- 5 We do science experiments in the .....  
a) playground    b) kitchen    c) gymnasium    d) laboratory
- 6 My school has a water .....  
a) mountain    b) fountain    c) dry    d) yard
- 7 The IT building is for ..... lessons.  
a) physical education    b) information technology  
c) gymnastics    d) science
- 8 Scientists can travel to other planets in a .....  
a) spaceship    b) ship    c) boat    d) felucca

البحيرة - إدارة حوض البحيرة التجميعية 2024

القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

popular – gymnastics – buildings – tablets – experiments

This is my school. We have some new ..... (1)..... at our school. Science laboratories are where we use all the equipment to do ..... (2)..... We take information technology lessons in the new IT building. There are over thirty desktop computers, laptops, and ..... (3)..... which we can borrow too. We use the gymnasium building for basketball, handball, and ..... (4).....

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 do – laboratory – in – We – experiments – the.

بورسعيد - توجيه للغة الإنجليزية 2024

- 2 The yellow – is – gymnasium – our – building – new.

- 3 where – This – have – is – break – the place – students.

- 4 night – really – was – last – I – tired.

#### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 This is the shirt ..... (who) I bought last week.
- 2 A pharmacy is a shop ..... (which) you can buy medicine. (SB)
- 3 Laila is the tall girl ..... (which) has red hair. (SB)
- 4 This is the bus ..... (where) I take to work.
- 5 This is the nurse ..... (where) looks after me.
- 6 Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ..... (who) is popular with many people. الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزة أول التعليمية 2024
- 7 We have laptops and tablets ..... (where) students can borrow. (SB)
- 8 Mr Mahdi is the teacher ..... (which) helps in the garden.
- 9 This is a large open area ..... (which) students have break. (SB)
- 10 The story is ..... (amazed). I like it.
- 11 The film was very ..... (bored). I didn't like it. القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية 2024
- 12 I'm ..... (surprising) to see my cousins here.
- 13 I'm ..... (exciting) about our vacation this week. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
- 14 I'm very ..... (interesting) in math.
- 15 Wandaland is an ..... (excited) TV series.

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 i'm really interested in science

- 2 mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club

#### 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements

##### "My school"

How many laboratories?

two laboratories

What do you play at the gymnasium?

basketball and handball

Why do students go to the IT building?

come for information  
technology lessons







### Story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

hare	أرنب بري	scared	خائف	stomach	معدة
voice	صوت (بشري)	forest	غابة	lake	بحيرة

#### Extra vocabulary

sunny (adj.)	شمس	grass	عشب	suddenly	فجأة
loud	صاخب/ عال	noise	إزعاج/ ضجيج	surprised	مندهش
favorite	مفضل	clever	ذكي	interested	مهتم
delicious	لذيذ	both	كلاهما	the biggest	الأكبر
the strongest	الأقوى	the bravest	الأشجع	mice	فئران
afraid	خائف	sorry	أسف	finally	أخيرًا

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
remember	remembered	shout	shouted
move	moved	laugh	laughed

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
lie	lay	speak	spoke
come	came	tell	told

#### Expressions and Phrases

run back home	يعود سريعًا للمنزل	get to	يصل إلى
come in	يدخل	Stay where you are!	ابق حيث أنت!
look at each other	ينظر بعضهم إلى بعض	run out	يجري إلى الخارج
for as everybody knows	كما يعلم الجميع	afraid of	خائف من
run away	يهرب	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة

#### Take care!

يمكن كتابته أسماء الحيوانات بحروف كسرة إذا كانت تعامل على أنها اسم لشخصه وليس نوعًا:

e.g. - There is a hare in my house. (حيوان)

- Something is moving inside Hare's house. (اسم الشخصية)



## Hare gets scared الأرنب البرية تصاب بالخوف



2. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

### The beginning

- 1 It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

إنه يوم مشمس، والأرنب البرية يرقد على العشب. فجأة، تصدر معدتها صوتاً عالياً. تذكر الأرنب البرية الموزون في مطبخها. هي جائعة!



### The middle

- 2 Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.

Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."

Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."



«الأرنب البرية تركض للممر، ولكن عندما تصل إلى بابها، توقف. ما هذه الضوضاء؟ شيء ما يتحرك داخل منزل الأرنب البرية. هل يوجد أحد هناك؟» يسأل الأرنب البرية.

«حيث أنت؟» يقول صوت عالٍ.

لأرنب البرية مفاجأة جداً. من في منزلها؟ ثم تحدث الصوت مرة أخرى. «الأرنب البرية، لا تدخل. إذا دخلت فساكنك. لأرانب سرتة طعامي المفضل».

لأرنب البرية حائفة جداً. الحيوان الذي في منزلها يريد أن يأكلها. الأرنب البرية تركض إلى الغابة حيث تعيش صديقتها الفردة الذكية. فردة، ساعدني أرجو! يقول الأرنب البرية: «يوجد حيوان بمنزلي، ويريد أن يأكلني!».

«فردة تبدو مهمة. حيوان؟ هما بنا نذهب ونرى» تقول الفردة.

يعودون إلى منزل الأرنب البرية. «من ينادي؟» تصرخ الفردة.

بحسب صوت، «فردة» لا تأتي. ساكنك إذا أتيت. الأرانب البرية طعامي المفضل، ولكن القرد أيضاً لذيذ».

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"

"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"



Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

الفردة والأرنب البرية ينظران إلى بعضهما. كلاهما جائع حذًا. يركضان إلى البعوضة حيث يعيش صديقهما القمل. «نحن نحاح مساعدتين» لا يفلتا! يقول القمل. «أنا قادم! أنا الجوان الأكبر والأقوى والأشجع في العالم. لا أحد يستطيع أن تأكلني!» القمل يذهب إلى باب الأرنبة البرية. «أنا قادم!» وهو يصيح. يوقف. يقول الجوان بالد حل. «أنا جائع وأحب أن أكل لا يستطيع أن تأكلني!» تصرخ القمل. «أنا الأكبر، الأقوى ...»

### The story

- 3 Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice! "Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"

Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "What scares you might be much smaller than you!"

They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.



فجاءه. يفتح باب الأرنبة البرية، ويركض عار صغير للخارج. القمل يصرخ عاليًا في الهواء! هو جائع حذًا. فكما يعرف الجميع، فإنه يخاف من الفئران. ينادون: «قار! قار!»، تصرخ القمل وهو يهرب بسرعة. ينظر الفارة إلى الأرنبة البرية والفردة. يقول «أنا أسفة، هل أنتم عاصون؟». تبدأ الأرنبة البرية والفردة في الضحك. يقولان: «لا، لمسا عاصين!» «ما بحثت قد يكون أصغر منك بكثير. ضحكت الجميع مرة أخرى. ثم يذهب الأرنبة البرية إلى الداخل لتأكل جزرها أخيرًا.

### The moral of the story

What scares you might be much smaller than you!

### Check

- 1 Who is in Hare's house?

- 2 Why was Hare scared?



### Tip!

When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called quotation marks:

e.g. "Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

e.g. "Is somebody there?" asked Monkey.

We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

e.g. "No, we are not angry," said Hare and Monkey.



# Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



/ʌ/



cut



truck



hut



bug



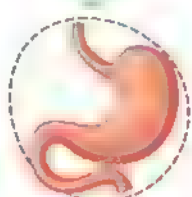
stuck



uncle



hungry



stomach



funny



come



nuts



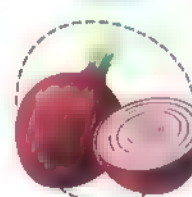
duck



honey



brush



onion

/æ/



cat



track



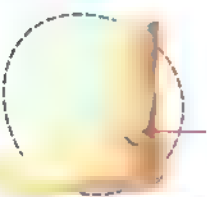
hat



bag



stack



ankle



animal



angry



happy



Harry





## Estimating numbers تقدير الأرقام



4. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an **approximate** number. We can round decimal numbers **up or down** to the nearest whole number:

عندما لا نحتاج أن نحسب بدقة، نكتب عدداً تقريبياً. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد التقديرية لأعلى أو أقل لأقرب رقم كامل.

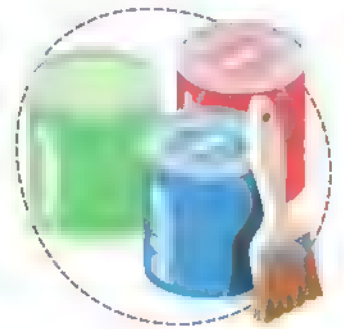
1.88  $\longrightarrow$  2.00

3.12  $\longrightarrow$  3.00



Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

حذاء الفصل حاتم يحتاج للدهن. يقوم بسمي حساب كمية طلاء التي يحتاجونها لدهان الجدران. يقيسون الجدران ويكتبون القياسات. ثم يبحثون على الإنترنت لمعرفة عدد قنات الطلاء التي يحتاجونها.



### Classroom wall measurements

قياسات جدران الفصل

Wall = h 2.66 m  $\times$  w 7.95 m

### The answer:

To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:

لحساب كمية طلاء التي يحتاجونها، يقوم بكتابة القياسات التقديرية لأعلى إلى أقرب عدد صحيح. ثم يضاعفون القياسات لتقدير مساحة الجدران التي تحتاج الدهن.

2.66  $\longrightarrow$  (3.00)  $\times$  7.95  $\longrightarrow$  (8.00) = 24 m<sup>2</sup>



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 I love ..... stories.  
a) writing      b) reading      c) making      d) buying
- 2 My favorite story is "Hare gets .....".  
a) happy      b) noisy      c) loud      d) scared
- 3 Hare is hungry and goes to her home to eat her .....  
a) bananas      b) apples      c) carrots      d) tomatoes
- 4 At the end, they find ..... inside the house.  
a) Mouse      b) Hare      c) Monkey      d) Elephant

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali was very ....., so he ate an apple.  
a) nervous      b) angry      c) worried      d) hungry
- 2 There's someone here, I can hear his .....  
a) voice      b) clothes      c) books      d) face
- 3 My uncle drives a white ..... every day.  
a) truck      b) track      c) duck      d) stack
- 4 My sister is afraid ..... the darkness.  
a) next      b) by      c) of      d) on
- 5 The duck is ..... in the hole. It can't get out.  
a) stack      b) stuck      c) cut      d) some
- 6 When you have a problem, you can ask ..... help.  
a) about      b) after      c) for      d) at

الموفية - إدارة أشمون 2024

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cat – stack – hungry – ankle – track

I like to go for a walk and run every day. Yesterday, I went for a walk and ran on the .....(1)..... . I saw a very cute .....(2)..... . The cat's .....(3)..... was hurt, and it was very .....(4)..... too. The cat was standing next to a big, red truck. We took it to the vet.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's a sunny day, and Hare is hungry! When she gets to her door, she hears a voice. Hare is very scared. The animal in her house tells her not to come in because he will eat her. She asks Monkey to help her. Monkey looks interested. The animal in Hare's house tells Monkey not to come in because he will eat her. Monkey and Hare are both very scared. They ask Elephant to help them. Elephant goes to Hare's door. Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and Mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! They all laugh.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "she" refers to .....  
 a) Mouse                      b) Hare                      c) Monkey                      d) Elephant
- 2 Monkey and Hare are both very .....  
 a) happy                      b) hungry                      c) scared                      d) sad
- 3 ..... was inside the house.  
 a) Mouse                      b) Hare                      c) Monkey                      d) Elephant

#### Answer the following questions:

- 4 Who helped Hare when she asked? .....
- 5 Why did they all laugh? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 eat – if – I'll – you – come in – you.

.....

- 2 inside – house – Hare – her – a noise – hears.

.....

- 3 Hare's – moving – is – Something – inside – house.

لحيظة إدارة، لورق، التعممة 2024

.....

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 he drives a white, big truck

.....

- 2 Is somebody there? asked Monkey

.....

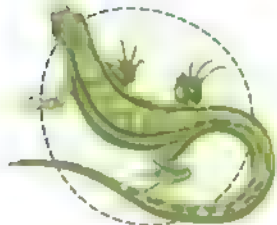


1 Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary



lizard



bird



fish



cat

### Extra vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	positive (adj.)	إيجابي	negative (adj.)	سلبي
calm (adj.)	هادئ	clean (adj.)	نظيف	independent (adj.)	مستقل
soft (adj.)	ناعم	fur	فرو	sharp (adj.)	حاد
claws	مخالب	scared (adj.)	خائف	well-being	راحة / سعادة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
touch يلمس	touch <u>ed</u>	pet يلعب	pet <u>ted</u>
use يستخدم	use <u>d</u>	include يتضمن	include <u>d</u>

### Expressions and Phrases

has to يضطر أن	keep as a pet يحتفظ به كحيوان أليف
nice to touch لطيف للمس	for a walk للتمشية
It is true that إنه صحيح أن	good for جيد لـ
It's difficult to من الصعب أن	far from بعيد عن
take a lot of time يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	find their way around يجدون طريقهم

### Important sentences جمل هامة

- \* I think cats make the best pets. أعتقد أن القطط هي أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة.
- \* Cats have soft fur which is nice to touch. القطط لها فراء ناعم لطيف للمس.
- \* Cats are clean and calm. القطط نظيفة وهادئة.
- \* Cats are independent. القطط مستقلة.
- \* Cats have sharp claws and teeth. القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

**Cats Are the Best Pets** القطة هي أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



القطة هي حيواني المفضلة و اعتقد انها افضل حيوان اليف. إنها جميلة ناعمة، نظيفة وهادئة وعادة ما تكون ودودة. إنها يحب الناس ولكنها مستقلة، لذلك ليس بحاجة لأحد في شمس كل يوم. صحيح أن القطة لديها مخالب و أسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضاً إنه عندما تدل قطة، تحصل سعادة، إذ فهي جيدة لرفاهيتك أيضاً.

**Cats as pets:****القطة كحيوانات أليفة:**

<b>Positives</b> إيجابيات	calm and clean	usually friendly	independent	have soft fur	beautiful	petting a cat makes you happy
<b>Negatives</b> سلبيات	have sharp teeth and claws					

**Language Focus**

You can use **but** to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use **but** to explain why it's not really a problem.

يمكن استخدام "but" لربط فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام "but" لشرح لماذا ليست مشكلة حقاً.

eg. I like most types of fruit, **but** I don't like mangoes.

It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, **but** they only use them when they are scared.



**Join these phrases to make single sentences. Use "but":**

1 I want to watch TV. My brother wants to play football.

Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them.

SB

Five-a-side football is an exciting sport. It takes a lot of time to practice it.

SB





### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 ..... cats makes me happy.

- a) Drawing      b) Petting      c) Studying      d) Sleeping

2 Cats are my best .....

المتميا - إدارة بنى مزار التعليمية 2024

- a) fruit      b) pets      c) plants      d) vegetables

3 Cats are ..... animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk.

- a) independent      b) bad      c) hungry      d) scared

4 Cats have beautiful, ..... fur.

- a) soft      b) hard      c) bad      d) ugly

5 You don't need to take cats for a ..... every day.

- a) swim      b) run      c) food      d) walk

6 Cats are good for your .....

- a) well-being      b) riding      c) studying      d) eating

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Adam. I have a cat. Cats are my favorite animals. I love cats because they make me feel happy, and I think they are the best pets. My cat has soft fur, which is nice to touch. My cat is very clean, calm, and friendly. I don't need to take it for a walk every day. My cat has very sharp claws and teeth, but it only uses them when it's scared. My cat is very beautiful and very cute. They are good for your well-being, too.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a pet .....

- a) fish      b) lizard      c) cat      d) bird

2 The underlined word "scared" means .....

- a) excited      b) happy      c) sad      d) afraid

3 My cat has soft fur, which is nice to .....

- a) eat      b) cut      c) touch      d) taste

#### Answer the following questions:

4 Why does Adam think cats are the best pets? .....

5 What negative points did Adam say about cats? .....

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur.

2 animals – Cats – calm – are – and – clean.

3 for – It's – lizards – food – difficult – to find.

4 sharp – teeth – Cats – have – claws – and.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets:

1 Cats like people, ..... (so) they are independent.

2 My new school is great, ..... (because) it's far from my house. **SB**

3 My job is tiring, ..... (so) I like it.

4 We ordered a pink dress, ..... (and) we received a red dress.

5 She told him a joke, ..... (or) he didn't laugh.

6 The food was expensive, ..... (and) it wasn't good.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

1 you don't need to take cats for a walk every day.

2 what is your favorite pet

### 6 Write a paragraph (150 words) using the following guiding elements:

#### "My favorite pet"

What's your favorite pet?

Why is it your favorite pet?

What do you do with your pet?



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

shy	خجول	calm	هادئ
polite	مؤدب	clever	ذكي
messy	فوضوي	organized	منظم
nervous	متوتر/ عصبى	worried	قلقان
intelligent	ذكي	personality	شخصية
relaxed	مسترخ/ هادئ	funny	مضحك/ مرح
textbook	كتاب مدرسي	friendly	ودود

## Lesson (2)

laboratory	معمل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب (في المعمل)	IT (information technology)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
building	مبنى	gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية
physical education	تربية بدنية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبي	tourist information website	موقع استعلامات سياحي
water fountain	نافورة مياه	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
benches	مقاعد ثابته	department	قسم

## Lesson (3)

hare	أرنب بري	stomach	المعدة
forest	الغابة	lake	بحيرة
delicious	شهي/ لذيذ	voice	صوت (بشري)
scared	خائف	the bravest	الأشجع
truck	شاحنة	track	مسار/ طريق
stuck	عالق	stack	كومة
nuts	مكسرات	hut	كوخ

## Lessons (4 &amp; 5)

lizard	سحلية	bird	طائر
pet	حيوان أليف	positive	إيجابي
negative	سلبي	calm	هادئ
clean	نظيف	independent	مستقل
fur	فرو	well-being	سعادة/ راحة
sharp	حاد	claws	مخالب

## Language Focus

## Relative pronouns

who

We use "who" to talk about people.

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher **who** runs the football club.

which

We use "which" to talk about things.

e.g. These are the shoes **which** I wear to school.

where

We use "where" to talk about places.

e.g. The gym is a place **where** we do physical education.

## -ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

excited interested surprised bored tired

e.g. Adel feels **excited** today.

## -ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

exciting interesting surprising boring tiring

e.g. It was **exciting** to finally meet.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

## Lesson 1

.....	ودود	.....	مهذب
.....	خجول	.....	فوضوى
.....	هادئ	.....	منظم
.....	ذكى	.....	متوتر

## Lesson 2

.....	مبنى	.....	موقع إلكترونى
.....	صالة ألعاب رياضية	.....	ملعب
.....	خريطة	.....	معامل
.....	أدوات	.....	تجارب
.....	نافورة	.....	مقاعد
.....	رياضة بدنية	.....	التربية الرياضية

## Lesson 3

.....	معدة	.....	أرنب برى
.....	بحيرة	.....	غابة
.....	خائف	.....	عشب
.....	فئران	.....	الأشجع
.....	يقصص / يقطع	.....	عسل
.....	عربة نقل	.....	فرشاة
.....	مكسرات	.....	بصلة
.....	عالق	.....	معدة
.....	طريق / مسار	.....	سعيد

## Lessons 4 &amp; 5

.....	حيوان أليف	.....	إيجابى
.....	سلبي	.....	سحلية
.....	مستقبل	.....	حاد
.....	راحة / سعادة	.....	خائف
.....	مخالب	.....	فرو

# WRITING TIME

تجميعه لأهم  
موضوعات  
الوحدة



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write about helping new students at school:

- My name is + اسمك and I often help new students.
- New students often feel + شعور الطلاب because + السبب.
- I help them + كيف تساعد.

## Helping new students at school

My name is Yara and I often help new students at school. New students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I help them get to know the new school. I sometimes stay with them at break, too. When they don't have their textbooks, I share my books with them.

## How to write about a place which you are proud of:

- Welcome to (اسم المكان), a place which we are proud of.
- .... (وصف المكان) is (اسم المبنى).
- .... (وصف المكان) is (اسم المبنى).
- We use it for (استخدامات المكان) ....

## A place I am proud of

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. The West Court is a large open area where students spend time outside. The 2024 Gym is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons.

## How to write about your favorite pet:

- I like (اسم الحيوان).
- I think + (صفة مميزة لهذا الحيوان).
- They are (صفة أخرى مميزة لهذا الحيوان) ....
- They are (صفة سلبية لهذا الحيوان) ....
- People say that + (رأي الناس بخصوص الحيوان) ....

## "My favorite pet"

I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. I don't have to take it for a walk every day. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.



### 1 Match the words to their meanings:

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| 1 friendly  | a. not tidy or organized                         |
| 2 shy       | b. nice to others, helpful                       |
| 3 clever    | c. tidy, careful                                 |
| 4 polite    | d. intelligent, good at school work              |
| 5 messy     | e. not calm, worried                             |
| 6 organized | f. worried about talking to people, quiet        |
| 7 nervous   | g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect |

### 2 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:

- 1 Dalia is the girl ..... sits next to me in the English class.
- 2 An ostrich is a big bird ..... can't fly.
- 3 This is the street ..... my uncle lives.
- 4 I really love the red flowers ..... grow in our garden.
- 5 The supermarket is the place ..... we buy food.

### 3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:

- 1 Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised – surprising) to see you!
- 2 The children feel (bored – boring) when there is nothing to do.
- 3 His birthday party was (excited – exciting). It was a lot of fun.
- 4 I'm really (interested – interesting) in Ancient Egypt.
- 5 I was really (tired – tiring) last night. I finished my homework late.
- 6 The results of the students' last test are (surprised – surprising).





## Listening



6

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ola has a ..... cat. (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
  - a) desert
  - b) wild
  - c) pet
  - d) forest
- 2 Cats are clean and ..... animals.
  - a) noisy
  - b) loud
  - c) naughty
  - d) calm
- 3 Cats are ..... animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk.
  - a) angry
  - b) independent
  - c) friendly
  - d) scared
- 4 When Ola pets her cat, it makes her feel .....
  - a) happy
  - b) sad
  - c) scared
  - d) clean



## Reading

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Someone who is clever, they are ..... and good at school work.
  - a) messy
  - b) relaxed
  - c) intelligent
  - d) nervous
- 2 Mr Hisham ..... the after-school sports club.
  - a) hides
  - b) runs
  - c) borrows
  - d) worries
- 3 Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are .....
  - a) happy
  - b) soft
  - c) scared
  - d) independent
- 4 She goes for a run on the ..... every day.
  - a) truck
  - b) stack
  - c) cut
  - d) track

السفينة - إدارة غرب المصورة التعليمية 2024

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

showed - shy - helpful - shared - relaxed

I moved to a new school last month. I was very nervous and ..... (1) ..... because I didn't know anyone. I met a new friend. His name is Malek. He took me around and ..... (2) ..... me where my classrooms were. Malek ..... (3) ..... his textbooks and worksheets with me. He is really helpful. I also met Ali, who is really ..... (4) ..... He helped me with my math homework.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love my school. My school has many new, modern buildings. There's the Ahmed Zewail Building. This is the place where we study science. There are four classrooms and two laboratories in that building. There is also the West Court. It's a large open area where students can spend time outside. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. We have a new gymnasium, we use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. I always enjoy my day at school.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Lama's school has many ..... buildings.  
a) ancient                      b) old                      c) small                      d) modern
- 2 The underlined word "Court" means .....  
a) classroom                      b) house                      c) park                      d) playground
- 3 We use the gymnasium during ..... lessons.  
a) science                      b) physical education                      c) math                      d) IT

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 How many laboratories are there in the school? .....
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....



## Writing

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 study – In s is – where – science – the place – students. ....
- 2 Salma – tidy – is – organized – or – not. ....
- 3 tired – My – was – father – yesterday – really. ....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 My sister's birthday is today. She's really ..... (exciting).
- 2 This is the man ..... (when) can speak English. القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس التسمية 2024

**7 Punctuate the following:**

1

nadine is kind and friendly

**8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

كتاب عنه  
صفحة  
309

5

**"My first day at school"**

How did you feel? – Who helped you?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your

★★★★★

50%

50 - 64%

65 - 84%

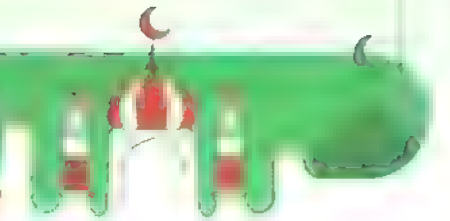
85 - 100%

Study again

Practice more

Well done!

Well done!



### 1 Read and circle the odd one out:

- 1 classroom – playground – laboratory – funny
- 2 friendly – messy – share – organized
- 3 help – meet – kind – show
- 4 white – which – who – where
- 5 tiring – interesting – excited – amazing

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Salma. I moved to a new school last month. I was very nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms were. She also stayed with me at break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy, and I love my new school.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Salma moved to a new ..... last month.  
a) job      b) school      c) sport      d) hospital
- 2 Lara ..... with Salma at break.  
a) stayed      b) sang      c) taught      d) knew

#### Answer the following questions:

- 3 How was Salma on her first day at school? .....
- 4 How did Lara help Salma? .....
- 5 How does Salma feel now? .....

### 3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences using the following guiding elements:

**"Cats are the best pets"**

calm – clean – sharp claws – independent – soft fur




---



---



---



---



---

# OCTOBER REVISION

1

We usually ..... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.

- a) plant      b) make      c) play      d) read

المنوفية - إدارة أضمون التعليمية 2024

2 I live in a/an ..... in the city with my family.

- a) tent      b) apartment block      c) cave      d) factory

دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

People who are ..... work for no money.

- a) volunteers      b) fishermen      c) parents      d) engineers

بورسعيد - توحيد اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

..... are harmful for plants. We use natural fertilizers instead.

- a) Crops      b) Soil      c) Trees      d) Chemicals

..... people are people who live in the neighborhood.

- a) Foreign      b) Unhealthy      c) Local      d) Strange

The community garden helps to clean the .....

- a) air      b) room      c) table      d) school

القليوبية - إدارة قلوب التعليمية 2024

There's a ..... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.

- a) minaret      b) souk      c) palace      d) railway line

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة البحاور التعليمية 2024

Egyptian food tastes delicious. I really ..... our food so much.

- a) use      b) pass through      c) hang out      d) miss

Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are .....

- a) happy      b) soft      c) scared      d) independent

الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المصورة التعليمية 2024

When you show respect to other people, they know you're .....

- a) polite      b) boring      c) organized      d) worried

You can find all the information you need on the school's .....

- a) court      b) gym      c) website      d) building

12 The word "....." has the same meaning as "tidy".

- a) shy      b) nervous      c) afraid      d) organized

القاهرة - إدارة الزهراء التعليمية 2024

We have a water ..... in the playground of our school.

- a) wheel      b) tank      c) fountain      d) bottle

14 Birds and cats are my favorite .....

- a) pets      b) bets      c) bites      d) pits

A cat can make you happy when you touch its soft .....

- a) mouth      b) fur      c) claw      d) teeth

The ..... is the place where students can study science.

- a) playground      b) court      c) laboratory      d) gymnasium

دمياط - اداره دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024

Volunteers are people who work ..... money.

- a) with      b) without      c) of      d) in

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

Tom is ..... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.

محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق التعليمية 2024

a) organized      b) calm      c) messy      d) shy

"....." means worried about talking to people.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة القنايات التعليمية 2024

a) Tidy      b) Messy      c) Fascinating      d) Shy

If I forget my book at home, I can ..... my friend's book.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

a) sure      b) share      c) eat      d) help



look – wildlife – foreign – local – forests

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our .....(1)..... We never grow ..... (2)..... plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area. We carefully .....(3)..... after them until they become a small forest. We also usually work with .....(4)..... communities to plant and look after the forests over time.

play – green – apartment – cook – view

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة السادس من أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

I live with my family. We live in a big .....(1)..... It's on the first floor. We have a great .....(2)..... from the balcony. We have .....(3)..... space in our neighborhood. We usually go and .....(4)..... football there.

pet – family – interesting – series – planet

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's .....(1)..... because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a .....(2)..... where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The .....(3)..... tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his .....(4).....

friendly – sharp – fur – scared – walk

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة التعليمية 2024

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft .....(1)..... which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and clean animals. They are usually .....(2)..... Cats like people, but they are independent. Cats have .....(3)..... claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are .....(4).....



PURPOSE: TO TEST THE STUDENT'S READING COMPREHENSION

1 goes – zoo – She – to – a year – twice – the.

الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق التعليمية 2024

2 always – Dalia – plays – tennis – on the – weekends.





to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur.

الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المتصورة التعليمية 2024

in – rarely – football – Tney – play – the – park.

القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

is – where – This – the house – Hana – lives.

never – Tney – late – are – school – for.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي التعليمية 2024

do – laboratories – in – We – experiments – the.

محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية 2024

great – for – roofs – Green – are – the environment.

محافظة بورسعيد - مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024

The self sn – anything – doesn't – boy – share.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

do – the dentist – you – go to – How – often?

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس التعليمية 2024

4

He ... .. (go) shopping every month.

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

My sisters ... .. (practic ng) playing the piano on Fridays.

3 Mr Adel ... .. (not come) to work late.

Mona and Huda ... .. (doesn't) plays games outside.

How ... .. (many) do you grow tomatoes in your garden?

Hamza ... .. (a ways) drinks soda. He knows it's unhealthy.

They .. .. (play usually) computer games on Sundays. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

I know a company that organizes trips to Luxor ... .. (one) a week.

Habiba is ... .. (exciting) to see her old friends. محافظة بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

10 I don't want to watch this series. It's really ... .. (bored).

11 We can sit under the tree ... .. (who) has long, green branches.

The park is a place ... .. (wno) he flies his kite. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

13 These are the shoes ... .. (who) I wear to school. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

Mr Ali is the manager ... .. (wn ch) organizes the event.

Let's play "Hide and seek" in the open area ... .. (wno) there's a fountain.

Nabil ... .. (arink) milk every morning. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح التعليمية 2024

Is this the house ... .. (who) your uncle lives? محافظة الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024

I don't ... .. (visit ng) my friends on Fridays. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

I'm ... .. (excit ng) about our vacation this week. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

This is the man ... .. (which) can speak English. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

100

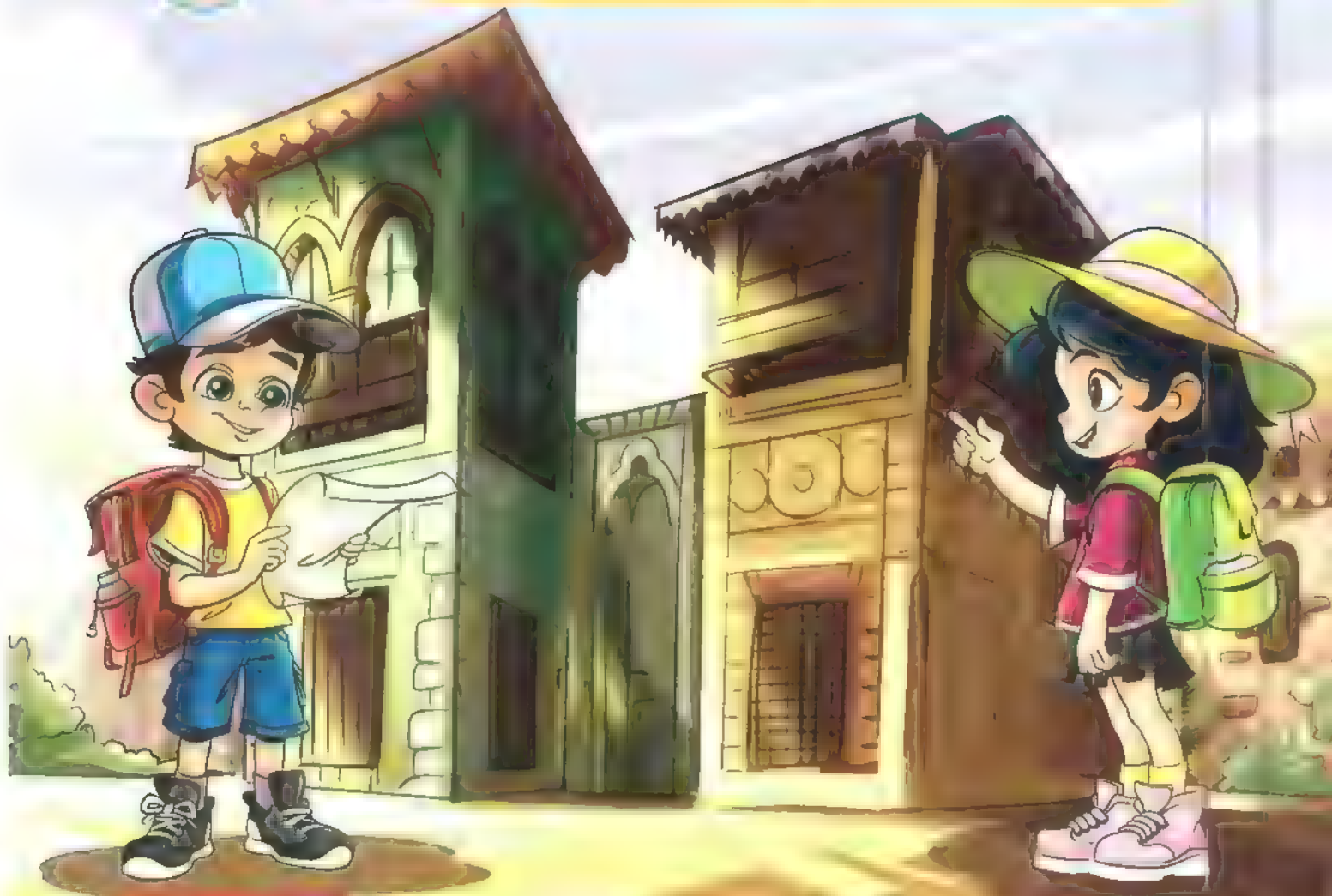
لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحة 252.

# Unit

3

## Vacation plans

خطط العطلة



### Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.
  - talk about facts using clauses with "if" or "when".
  - talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.
  - read and listen to determine the central message.
  - practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
  - write a blog post about a place he/she likes visiting.
  - research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

### Did you know?

When you see it from the air, the Nile Valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between \*desert cliffs, it is narrow.

### Find out!

If we see Egypt from the air, the Nile Delta and the Nile \*valley are green areas. The \*western and \*eastern deserts are brown. There are many cities in Egypt like Cairo, Alexandria, Port Said, Aswan, and Luxor.

\*desert cliffs

المنحدرات الصحراوية

\*Valley

الوادي

\*western

الغربية

\*eastern

الشرقية



Let's go quad biking on Tuesday  
دعنا نركب الدراجات الرباعية يوم الثلاثاء



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



### Main vocabulary



explore the souks



climb the Bab  
Zuwayla minaret

نسلق / نصعد إلى / منبذة باب زويطة



take photos for  
the school project

ننقل صوراً من أجل مشروع مدرسي



go quad biking in  
the desert

نركب دراجة رباعية في صحراء



ride on a rollercoaster

نركب قطار ملامحي



visit the Manial  
Palace Museum

نزور متحف قصر المنيس

### Extra vocabulary

excited (adj.)	متحمس	vacation	عطلة (إجازة)	places	أماكن
theme park	مدينة الملاهي	outside	بالخارج	interesting	شيق / مثير للاهتمام
Giza	الجيزة	minutes	دقائق	early	مبكراً
difficult	صعب	the view	المسظر	the top	القمة
beautiful	جميل	sunset	الغروب	near	قريب / بالقرب من

Let's say it right! -

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (t) في كلمة (oto) يطقان (ف) / /  
لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (u) في كلمة (quad) يطقان /wo/

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
try يحاول/ يجرب	tried	watch يشاهد / يراقب	watched
arrive يصل	arrived	explore يستكشف	explored

## Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	take يأخذ	took
ride يركب	rode	come يأتي	came

## Expressions and Phrases

Me too! وأنا أيضًا!	Why don't we ...?	لِمَ لا ...؟
look interesting يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام	Like what?	مثل ماذا؟
take the bus يستقل (يركب) الأتوبيس	late afternoon وقت متأخر من الظهر	
over the city فوق المدينة (يغطي المدينة)	come back to يعود إلى	
What else ...? ماذا أيضًا ...؟	here we come إننا قادمون	

## Important sentences

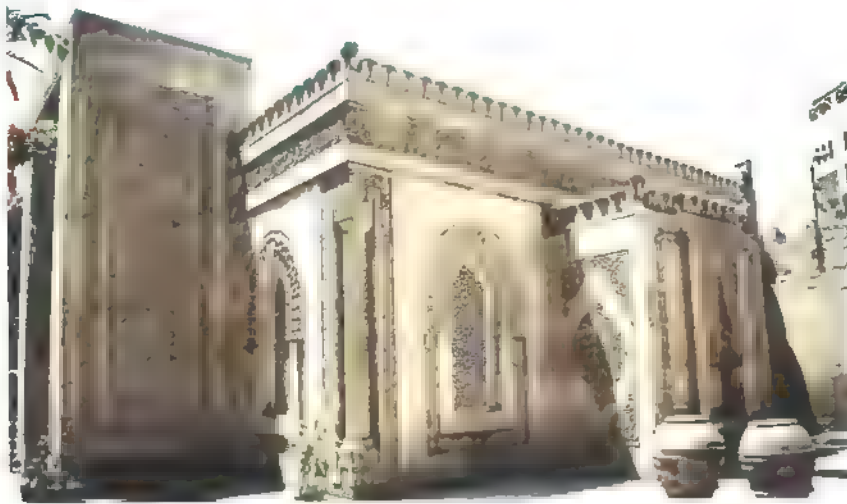
- \* There are many activities to do in Cairo. هناك العديد من الأنشطة للقيام بها في القاهرة.
- \* We can visit the Manial Palace Museum. يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المينيل.
- \* We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في صحراء الجيزة.
- \* We can climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret. يمكننا تسلق منڈنة باب زويلة.
- \* We can explore the souks. يمكننا استكشاف الأسواق.

## Check

## Choose the correct answer:

- Why don't we go quad (climbing - biking - riding - visiting) in the desert of Giza?
- We should climb the Bab Zuwayla (project - souk - rollercoaster - minaret) when we visit Cairo.
- Let's (take - explore - climb - go) the souks on Sunday.
- I can (take - arrive - go - visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
- Salma is too scared to (climb - ride - take - explore) on the rollercoaster.
- You can take (souks - minarets - photos - places) for your school project when you visit the museum.





I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Basel



Samer

Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

Basel



Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Like what?

أنا، ماذا؟

Basel



We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening. Yes. What else can we do?

نفسر يمكننا الذهاب بكر يوم الأربعاء، ونعود للمصدر قبل المساء، حسناً، ماذا يمكننا ان نفعل ايضاً

Basel



Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the minaret.

Basel



Great! Cairo, here we come!

## Language Functions

نستخدم لأفقر حبات مستخدم عبارات من

Why don't + (inf.) ...? ... الفعل في المصدر

Let's + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

3 Why don't we try new places?

4 Let's visit the museum on Monday.



(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Reem and Rana are .....  
 a) sisters      b) friends      c) cousins      d) aunts
- 2 They are planning for a vacation in .....  
 a) Cairo      b) Alexandria      c) Aswan      d) Giza
- 3 Reem thinks they should visit the ..... Museum on Monday.  
 a) Art      b) Natural      c) Egyptian      d) Manial Palace
- 4 Rana wants to go quad biking in the desert on .....  
 a) Sunday      b) Tuesday      c) Monday      d) Friday

- 5 You can visit many places in Cairo when you go on a .....  
 a) museum      b) souk      c) minaret      d) vacation
- 6 I want to ..... the souks on Monday. محافظة الفيوم - إدارة طوح التعليمية 2024  
 a) expand      b) explain      c) explore      d) experience
- 7 We can ride on a rollercoaster at the ..... محافظة الفيوم - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024  
 a) palace      b) museum      c) theme park      d) desert
- 8 The students need to ..... some photos for their school project.  
 a) go      b) ride      c) take      d) visit
- 9 We can go quad biking in the ..... محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024  
 a) desert      b) sea      c) pitch      d) school
- 10 The Bab Zuwayla ..... is an amazing place to visit in Cairo.  
 a) museum      b) street      c) souk      d) minaret
- 11 He wants to visit the Manial ..... Museum. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السلاويين التعليمية 2024  
 a) Palace      b) Castle      c) House      d) Home
- 12 If we ..... the bus, we will arrive in 30 minutes.  
 a) take      b) go      c) visit      d) climb
- 13 It's difficult to climb, but the ..... from the top is beautiful.  
 a) view      b) vacation      c) project      d) photo

sunset – project – try – ride – Manial

Hana is too excited about her next vacation in Cairo. There are lots of things to see there and she wants to ..... (1)..... new places when she arrives. On Monday, she can visit the ..... (2)..... Palace Museum with her friend Ola. They want to take some photos for their school ..... (3)..... . She also wants to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret and watch the ..... (4)..... over the city.

Samer and Basel are planning for their vacation this week. They are very excited. They will take their mom with them. Basel suggested trying new places, like Cairo where there are lots to see. Samer wants to see the Manial Palace Museum to take photos for his school project. He thinks museums are very interesting places. Basel wants to go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster. Also, they are going to visit other places outside Cairo, like going quad biking in the desert in Giza. If they take the bus, they will arrive in about 30 minutes. Exploring new places is a very good idea.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) plans for school day                      b) plans for a vacation  
 c) plans for the summer                      d) plans for a picnic
- 2 Basel and Samer are .....  
 a) guests                      b) friends                      c) teachers                      d) brothers
- 3 They want to ride on a ..... in the park.  
 a) rollercoaster                      b) camel                      c) horse                      d) bus

**Answer the following questions:**

Why does Samer want to visit the Manial Palace Museum?

5 What activity can they do in the desert of Giza?

1 Let's – the – minaret – Zuwayla – climb – Bab.

محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية 2024

2 can – places – new – We – try – our vacation – on.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

Monday – What – we – can – do – on?

**6 Punctuate the following:**

1 I m excited about my vacation

القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

What else can we do in cairo





**If we book the tour today, it's cheaper**  
إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فستكون أرخص



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary

information	معلومات	company	شركة	website	موقع إلكتروني
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	price	سعر	tour	رحلة / جولة
instructions	تعليمات	discount	خصم	tickets	تذاكر

### Extra vocabulary

adventures	مغامرات	helmet	خوذة	cheaper	أرخص
office	مكتب	wallet	محفظة	credit card	بطاقة ائتمان
bank details	تفاصيل بنكية	dust	غبار	free	مجاناً
stomach ache	ألم في المعدة	freezer	مُجمد	dictionary	قاموس
regular	منتظمة	breaks	استراحات	brains	أدمغة / عقول
routine	(روتين) عادات متكررة	lunchtime	وقت العشاء	list	قائمة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
book	booked	last	lasted
press	pressed	die	died
concentrate	concentrated	check	checked

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet	met	wear	wore
drive	drove	ride	rode

### Expressions and Phrases

lunch is included	السعر يشمل وجبة الغداء	stay safe	يبقى آمناً
pay for (something)	يدفع ثمن شيء ما	Here you are.	تفضل
get better	يتحسن	look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة
turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى	write down	يسجل / يدون
check it off	يتحقق منها	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

## Listening script page 38 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Dad, here's the information I found online about quad biking in the desert.

Oh, thanks, Samer. Show me.

Dad



Samer

The company is called Desert Adventures. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

OK. What time will he meet us?

Dad



He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

And what time do we get back?

Dad



Samer

We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price. Should we take some water?

منقول: يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟ السعر يشمل وجبة بعداء، هل يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟

Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

Dad



نعم. فكرة جيدة. ما هو حجم المجموعة؟



It'll be a group of six.

I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

أعجبني الصور. الجميع يرتدي خوذات. هذا جيد. عليك ارتداء خذوة إذا كنت تتركب دراجة رباعية.  
في مدى ستتركب الدراجات لمدّة؟

Dad



One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

أحدى جولاتك مدّة 45 دقيقة، ولكن هناك أيضاً جولة مدّة ساعة. هل يمكننا جولة

Dad



Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions so that you stay safe.

بالتأكيد. سيكون هذا ممتعاً جداً. تذكر أن تستمع لتعليمات المرشد حتى تبقى آمن.

Son



Yes, I will, Dad.

بالتأكيد، يا أبي.

Dad



Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

هذا! كيف نبحر الجولة إذا لم يمكن من التبحر على الموقع الإلكتروني؟



We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

يمكننا حجزها في المكتب في المدينة. إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فهي أرخص. نحصل على خصم 10%.

Dad



Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

عظيم. هل يمكنك أن توفّي محفظتي؟ أحتاج بطاقتي الائتمانية لدفع بضع تذاكر. لنذهب إلى المكتب الآن.



Sure, Dad. Here you are.

# Language Focus



## If/When (Zero Conditional)

لو / عندما (الحالة الصفرية)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم العبارات مع if/when مع المضارع أو بلفظ ماضية من can. نستخدم عن الحقائق أو الأشياء التي عادة ما تكون صحيحة.

مثال

If/When

present simple ...

جملة في المضارع البسيط

present simple/ can + (inf.) ...

في المضارع بسيط فعل بقدرة

e.g. If you press the button, the tablet switches off.

When the lights turn off, you can use a candle.

Wh word

do/ does/  
can

subject

المفعول

(inf.)

الفعل في المصدر

if/  
when

present simple ...?

جملة في المضارع بسيط

e.g. How do we get to Giza if we take the bus?



عندما تأتي if/when في بداية الجملة، يفصل بين الجملتين بعلامة استفهام.

e.g. If you go to bed early, you get up early.

لنستخدم المسبوقة بـ if/when عادة تأتي في نهاية السؤال.

e.g. What can we watch when we go to the cinema?

تمرين

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 When it (rains - rained - rain - raining), the ground gets wet.
- 2 If it gets hotter, ice (melt - melted - melts - melting).
- 3 If you study hard, you (learned - can earn - earns - learning) more.
- 4 Flowers open when (it's - it was - it does - it can) warm in the spring.
- 5 You (got - can get - gets - getting) purple if you mix red and blue.
- 6 What (happens - happened - to happen - happening) if you freeze water?
- 7 What (did - can - could - does) you do when you receive the money?
- 8 (Do - Does - Did - Doing) birds sing if it's morning?
- 9 (Can - Would - Did - Doing) you ask her about my phone when you meet her?
- 10 Can stars shine brighter if there (is - does - do - was) no moon?



Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer.

If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays or Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also,



don't study when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can concentrate better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

How long should a student study?

Why is it important to have regular breaks?

Why is it better to study at the same time each day?

## B

## Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

We use prepositions of time **at**, **on**, and **in**, to say when something happens.

حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (in - on - at) نستخدمها لنعلم متى يحدث شيء.

## with times

مع أوقات

at midnight	في منتصف الليل
at four o'clock	في الساعة الرابعة
at lunchtime	في وقت الغداء
at midday	في منتصف اليوم

I have breakfast **at**  
7 o'clock in the morning.



## with days and dates

مع أيام وتواريخ

on Monday	في يوم الإثنين
on my birthday	في يوم عيد ميلادي
on April 13 <sup>th</sup>	في الـ 13 من إبريل
on the weekend	في الإجازة الأسبوعية
on holidays	في الإجازات

My birthday is **on** April 24<sup>th</sup>.



## with times of day, months, seasons, and years

أوقات اليوم والشهور والفصول والسنوات

in the afternoon	في وقت الظهيرة
in May	في شهر مايو
in the summer	في فصل الصيف
in 2004	في عام 2004

I go to Paris **in** the winter.



eg: A **When** do you go to bed? B: I go to bed **at** 9:00 pm.

نستخدم **When** لسؤال عن وقت حدوث الأشياء:

## Choose the correct answer:

- (In - On - At - By) 7:00 am, I wake up ready for a new school day!
- (In - On - At - By) December, it often snows here.
- I always sleep early (in - on - at - of) school days.
- (Where - When - Who - How) do they travel abroad? B In the summer.
- I travel to London (on - in - at - by) May.
- The sun rises brightly (at - on - in - to) the morning every day.
- Is Ola's birthday (at - in - to - on) July 4<sup>th</sup>?
- The movie starts (at - on - in - by) 8:30 pm, so hurry up!
- We go skiing (on - in - at - by) the winter when there's a lot of snow.
- We celebrate the festival (at - in - on - to) October 31<sup>st</sup>.



4. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6:30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Sunday, Tuesday, and Thursday.

مرحباً، اسمي هانا. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة 6 صباحاً. أتناول الإفطار مع عائلتي في الساعة 6:30 صباحاً. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم السبت. أتناول الرياضة يوم الأحد. أعمل الواجب على يوم الأحد، الثلاثاء، وأربعاء.



Youssef

Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7:30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

مرحباً، أنا يوسف. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة 7 صباحاً. أتناول الإفطار مع جدتي وجدتي في الساعة 7:30 صباحاً. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة ولكني أتناول الرياضة يوم السبت. أعمل الواجب على يوم الأربعاء.



Hello. My name's Mayar. I get up every day at 6:30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

مرحباً، اسمي ميار. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة 6:30 وأتناول الإفطار مع عائلتي في الساعة 7 صباحاً. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم الأحد في المساء. أنا لا أتناول الرياضة. أعمل الواجب على يوم الاثنين والأربعاء.



Nader

Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8:15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

مرحباً، اسمي نادر. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة 8 صباحاً. أتناول الإفطار مع أختي في الساعة 8:15، ثم نذهب إلى المدرسة. أنا لا أذهب إلى المكتبة لأنني أملك الكثير من الكتب في المنزل. أتناول الرياضة يوم الأربعاء. أعمل الواجب كل يوم.



- 1 A: What ..... will he meet us? B: At 9 am.  
a) place      b) time      c) cost      d) website
- 2 You should listen to the guide's ..... to stay safe.  
a) adventures      b) tours      c) instructions      d) tickets
- 3 You have to wear a ..... if you ride a quad bike.  
a) wallet      b) credit card      c) ticket      d) helmet
- 4 If you book today, you can get a 10% .....  
a) discount      b) tour      c) company      d) guide
- 5 I need my ..... to pay for the tickets.  
a) helmet      b) adventure      c) credit card      d) quad bike
- When you study for hours without break, you can't .....  
a) eat      b) concentrate      c) write down      d) check

brains – longer – concentrate – have – forget

حافظه القاهرة إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes, but no ..... (1) ..... If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't ..... (2) ..... When you ..... (3) ..... regular breaks, that helps you more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's ..... (4) ..... work better if they have a regular routine.

don't – water – Plants – if – die – you – them.

حافظه القليوبية إدارة شبرا الخيمة التعليمية 2024

2 when – study – Don't – you're – hungry.

حافظه المنوفية إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

3 at – us – will – the hotel – The guide – meet.

حافظه المنوفية إدارة شبرا الخيمة التعليمية 2024

4 don't – We – go to – at – library – lunchtime – the.



..... (At) Saturdays, Ayman goes cycling.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

I got many presents ..... (at) my birthday.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام التعليمية 2024

3 He was born ..... (on) March.

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024

..... (What) is your birthday? B It's on April 14<sup>th</sup>.

5 If you ..... (studied) hard, you can pass the exam.

Yesterday, my dad came home ..... (n) midnight.

If you book the tour on the website, it ..... (ne) faster and cheaper.

You can get a discount when you ..... (us ng) your credit card.

I usually go to Alexandria ... ..... (on) summer.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة المدرشين التعليمية 2024

How can we ..... (get ng) to Luxor if we miss the train?

محافظة القنوبية - إدارة سيدى التعليمية 2024

### 5 Punctuate the following:

1 noha was born on may 17<sup>th</sup>.

if you heat water it melts.

elements:

### "Tips for studying"

30 minutes but no longer – have regular breaks – healthy meal



### Fatima faces her fear فاطيمة تواجه خوفها

1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

teenage (adj.)	مراهق	dome	قبة	secret	سر
heights	ارتفاعات	fear	خوف	sunset	غروب الشمس
calmer	أكثر هدوءًا	view	منظر	incredible	لا يصدق

#### Extra vocabulary

building	مبنى	typical	عادي	monument	أثر تاريخي
cousin	ابن عم / بنت عم	excited	متحمس	famous	مشهور
hill	تل	fantastic	رائع	scared	خائف

#### Conjugate

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
climb	يتسلق	climbed		face	يواجه	faced	
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed		reach	يصل	reached	
smile	يتسم	smiled		breathe	يتنفس	breathed	
lift	يرفع	lifted		suggest	يقترح	suggested	

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
come	يأتي	came		see	يرى	saw	
say	يتكلم / يقول	said		feel	يشعر	felt	

#### Expressions and Phrases

climb up the hill	يتسلق التل	afraid of heights	خائف من الارتفاعات
That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة جيدة.	(someone's) face is white	أصبح وجهه شاحبًا
look around	ينظر حوله	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

#### Take care!

- e.g. - climb (n) تسلق : After a long climb, they reached the top.  
 - climb (v) تسلق : Fatima climbed the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa.

بعد تسلق قبة أبو الحوا، وصلوا إلى القمة.



## 2. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it – there's a great view from there!"



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says. "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."



في الثلاثاء وفتيات عبد شمس سو صوفى، بعد تسلق أسبوع صعب، وصلت قمة، وجهه كظلمة  
بلو حياء، هي حبة حد. أجد مل بدها وسسم وبقول نفسى مطءة. "يمكنك فتن  
فد بديتة و بدو اء

Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!



سقط ك عمة بالاراء. دمة سبها بمرى بصيرة. انك لا ممدى. فعداء بر علة صفة  
بدوف. هي سطر بصفاء لاجل عفس فى مكان رائع كبد

**Tip!** Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra details. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

حصة مثال بحد و يمكن ان ندر وجود شخصيات على حواسهم فى تلك اللحظة

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Fatima and Amal are (sisters – cousins – mothers – friends).
- 2 Fatima lives in (Alexandria – Aswan – Cairo – Luxor).
- 3 Fatima is afraid of (dogs – cats – school – heights).





## Story

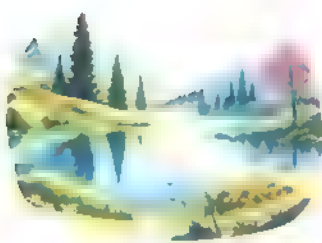


3. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary



lake



river



stream

نهر صغير



puddle

بركة ماء

### Extra vocabulary

deer	غزال	forest	غابة	beautiful (adj.)	جميل
a drink	شربة ماء	wolf	ذئب	cool (adj.)	بارد
clear (adj.)	نقى	bear	دب	fox	ثعلب
finally	أخيراً	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	afraid (adj.)	خائف
brave (adj.)	شجاع	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	proud (adj.)	فخور

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
stop	يتوقف	stop		want	يريد	wanted
sparkle	يلمع	sparkle		watch	يراقب	watched

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
run	يجرى	ran		come	يأتى	came
drink	يشرب	drank		see	يرى	saw

### Expressions and Phrases

run through	يجرى عبر	stop for a drink	يتوقف لأجل شربة ماء
the same lake	نفس البحيرة	have a drink from	يتناول شربة ماء من
sparkle in the sun	يلمع في الشمس	go back to	يعود إلى

Take care!

e.g. - drink (n) : He goes to the lake and has a drink.

- drink (v) : Little Deer wants to drink from the river.

# Little Deer In The Forest

الغزال الصغير في الغابة



## 4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### The beginning

1 Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. "Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.



### The middle

2 Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream. The stream sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.



Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

يذهب الغزال الصغير يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة. إنه يمشي عبر الغابة.

### The end

- 3 Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle. Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!" Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.



### The moral of the story

Facing our fears and being brave makes us feel happy and proud.

تواجه مخاوفنا وكوننا شجاعين يجعلنا نشعر بالسعادة والفخر.



1 How does the river look like?

Why can't Little Deer drink from the stream?

What does Little Deer think when he sees the bird?



# Pronunciation



5. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وفل:



/w/



water



wolf



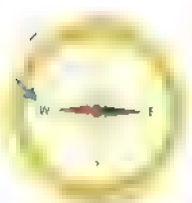
window



wet



whale



west



walk



web



warm



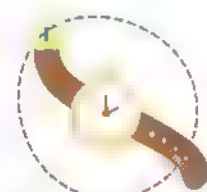
white



went



wear

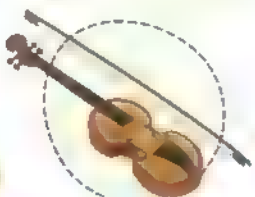


watch

/v/



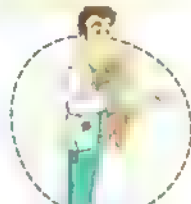
volcano



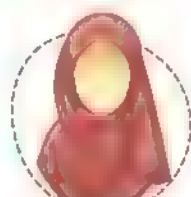
violin



vegetables



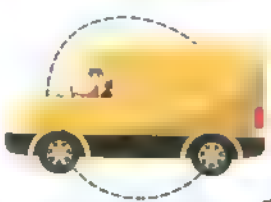
vest



veil



vest



van



visit



vase



village





(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Little Deer runs through the .....  
a) river                      b) forest                      c) farm                      d) park
- 2 Little Deer comes to a beautiful ..... to drink.  
a) building                      b) palace                      c) stream                      d) lake
- 3 Little Deer sees a ..... by the lake.  
a) wolf                      b) lion                      c) hippo                      d) bird
- 4 ..... has a drink from the lake.  
a) Bear                      b) Cat                      c) Wolf                      d) Fox

Choose the correct word:

- 1 We ..... up the hill to the dome. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024  
a) fly                      b) swim                      c) climb                      d) drive
- Kamal is ..... of heights. He can't climb the minaret. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024  
a) afraid                      b) proud                      c) excited                      d) sure
- My house is by the river. I have a beautiful ..... from my window.  
a) monument                      b) teenager                      c) fear                      d) view
- 4 You should keep your friends' .....  
a) families                      b) secrets                      c) jobs                      d) puddles
- 5 She is trying to ..... her fear of heights. محافظة دمياط - إدارة العرقا التعليمية 2024  
a) face                      b) hunt                      c) want                      d) reach
- 6 We are ..... of our country. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024  
a) proud                      b) kind                      c) happy                      d) angry
- 7 Little Deer was ..... and it wanted to have a drink.  
a) hungry                      b) thirsty                      c) afraid                      d) scared
- 8 The stream ..... in the sun. It looks amazing.  
a) dries                      b) sparkles                      c) cleans                      d) drinks

disappoint – view – delicious – famous – afraid

Amal comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the ..... (1) ..... places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great ..... (2) ..... from there. Fatima has a secret. She is ..... (3) ..... of heights. She can't climb the hill up to the dome, but she doesn't want to ..... (4) ..... her cousin. She decides to face her fears and go with her.

Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar and his sister Logy like going outside on their vacation. They visit many places in Cairo, Giza, Luxor, and Aswan. One day, Logy asked her brother to go to the Cairo Tower. At first, Omar didn't want to go there because he was afraid of heights. Then, he decided to face his fear and go to the Cairo Tower. On Friday, they got up early and went to the Cairo Tower by bus. From the Cairo Tower, Omar and Logy could see the great view of Cairo and the Nile.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) school                      b) tourism                      c) vacation                      d) parks
- 2 The underlined word "afraid" means .....  
 a) scared                      b) happy                      c) sad                      d) amazed
- 3 Omar and Logy saw the great view of the .....  
 a) pyramids                      b) Nile                      c) minaret                      d) museum

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why didn't Omar want to go to the Cairo Tower?

- 2 How did they go to the Cairo Tower?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 feels - Little - and - Deer - proud - happy.

- 2 hill - she - How - can - climb - the?

- 3 the forest - Deer - Little - runs - through.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

- 4 face - fear - her - Fatma - decides - to.

Punctuate the following:

- 1 It's amal's first time in aswan.

- 2 how does Little Deer feel



### Writing



#### 1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

#### Main vocabulary

carnival	مهرجان ترفيهي	rides	جولات (الاعاب)	theaters	مسارح
waterfalls	شلالات	simulation	محاكاة	destination	وجهة

#### Extra vocabulary

blog post	منشور في مدونة	surprise	مفاجأة	fantasy	خيال
rollercoaster	قطار الملاهي	stores	محلات	children's section	قسم الأطفال
the Orient Train	قطار الشرق	tickets	تذاكر	scary (adj.)	مخيف
wet	مبلل	seat	مقعد	screens	شاشات
snowy	مغطى بالثلج	ocean	محيط	realistic	واقعي
double room	غرفة مزدوجة	busy	مزدحم	Sharm El-Sheikh	شرم الشيخ
St Catherine's monastery	دير سانت كاترين	square	ميدان	tourist brochure	كتيب سياحي

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
guess	يخمن	guess	يصل
wait	ينتظر	waited	استريح
		relax	relaxed

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sit	يجلس	sat	يتكلف
		cost	cost

#### Expressions and Phrases

a lot to see and do	الكثير لتراه وتفعله	a bit scary	مخيف قليلاً
all around you	في كل مكان حولك	sound and light effects	تأثيرات الصوت والضوء
around the world	حول العالم	per night/ per person	في الليلة/ للشخص

#### Important sentences جمل مهمة

- \* Nashwa has a special birthday surprise at the carnival.  
نشوى لديها مفاجأة خاصة من أجل عيد ميلادها في المهرجان الترفيهي.
- \* There are amazing rides to try and theaters to watch shows.  
هناك ألعاب رائعة يمكنك تجربتها ومسارح لمشاهدة العروض.
- \* In the simulation theater, there are big screens all around you.  
في مسرح المحاكاة، هناك شاشات كبيرة تحيط بك في كل مكان.

## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الصفحة الرئيسية

عن الصفحة

روابط

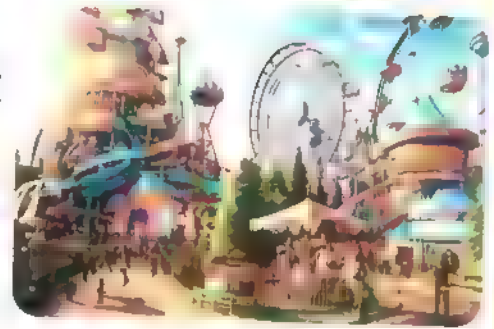
سجلات

Nashwa's blog

Tuesday June 3<sup>rd</sup>

## All the fun of the Carnival!

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.



When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section has nine rides, including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world – snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic – I can't wait! What a great birthday present – thanks Mom and Dad!

في مسرح المحاكاة، يجلس الناس على مقاعد مريحة مع شاشات كبيرة من حولهم ويرون ويسمعون تأثيرات صوتية وبصرية رائعة.

## Choose the correct answer:

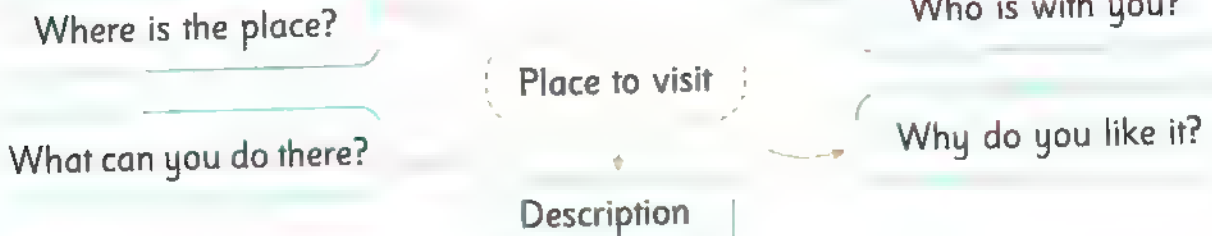
- 1 The carnival is in a (park – house – school – zoo).
- 2 If you're (weak – sick – brave – happy), you can go on a rollercoaster.
- 3 It feels like you're in a different place when you're in the simulation (park – club – school – theater).



## 3. Read and notice:

**How to write a blog post** كيفية كتابة منشورًا في مدونة

Make a mind map or take notes.



A blog post should have a title and date.

المدونون يكتبون منشورًا في مدونة.

Use informal language and first-person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about his experiences.

يستخدم المدونون لغة غير رسمية، ويستخدمون ضمائر المتكلم (I, my, me). يجب أن يتضمن المنشور قصة شخصية، وعادةً ما يعبر الكاتب عن آرائه ومشاعره حول تجربته.

Bloggers often add photos to make the blog more attractive.

المدونون غالبًا يضيفون صورًا لجعل المدونة أكثر جاذبية.

**"My visit to the Pyramids"**

Why do you like it? – What can you do there?

اسم المدون

اسم المدون

تاريخ النشر

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Project

### Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing holiday destination!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة رائعة في الإجازة!



For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

فقط سعر ١٠٠٠ جنيه في الليلة للشخص في الغرفة المزدوجة.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

شرم الشيخ هي مدينة مشيرة بالاهتمام ومزدحمة في مصر مطلية على

سحر الأحمر بوجد العديد من لأشياء برؤيتها وفعلها.

- swim in the sea أن نغوم في البحر
- relax on the beach أن نستريح على الشاطئ

- eat good food

أن نساول طعاماً لذيذاً



visit the St Catherine's monastery

أن نرور دير سانت كاترين

Take **Let's Ride!** bus from Giza Square every afternoon at 3 pm for LE 500 only!

خذ حافله **Let's Ride!** من ميدان بحيرة كل طهرة، فقط في مقابل

٥٠٠ جنيه مصري



- go quad biking in the desert أن نركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting (country - town - farm - village) in Egypt.
- 2 You can go quad biking in the (desert - garden - carnival - sea).
- 3 Sharm El-Sheikh is by the (Red - Yellow - Dead - Blue) Sea.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

There are a lot of ..... at the carnival like the rollercoaster.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024

a) jungles      b) rides      c) waterfalls      d) cities

2 You can watch ..... at the theaters.

a) children      b) shows      c) fairy tales      d) waterfalls

3 The ..... ride is a bit scary, but it can get you wet.

a) waterfall      b) train      c) rollercoaster      d) simulation

There are big ..... all around you in the simulation theater.

a) rides      b) windows      c) screens      d) trains

We can ride on a rollercoaster in the .....

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قها التعليمية 2024

a) palace      b) museum      c) carnival      d) desert

6 After a long time, we arrived at our.....

a) information      b) waterfalls      c) destination      d) pollution

7 You can swim in the sea or ..... on the beach.

a) fall      b) visit      c) relax      d) fly

I'll visit St Catherine's ..... when I go to Sharm El-Sheikh.

a) castle      b) palace      c) museum      d) monastery

### 2 Read the text and choose the correct word from the box.

stores — swim — summer — desert — quad biking

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

Sharm El-Sheikh is a big Egyptian town on the Red Sea. It's hot and sunny in the .....(1)..... A lot of tourists all over the world love to visit Sharm El-Sheikh. They .....(2)..... in the Red Sea with dolphins. Also, they can go on safari in the .....(3)..... In Sharm El-Sheikh, there are too many bazaars and .....(4)..... Tourists can buy Egyptian products, perfume, and spices.

### 3 Read the text and choose the correct word from the box.

My name is Ola. Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where you can watch shows. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater where we can sit in our seats with big screens all around us and there are sound and light effects, and we feel like we're in different places around the world — snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic.







يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

explore the souks يستكشف الأسواق	climb the Bob Zuwayla minaret يصعد مأذنة باب رويلة
take photos for the school project يلتقط صورًا لمشروع المدرسة	go quad biking in the desert يركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء
ride on a rollercoaster يركب قطار العلهي	visit the Manial Palace Museum يزور متحف قصر المنيل
excited متحمس	vacation عطلة
places أماكن	theme park مدينة الملاهي
view منظر	the top القمة
late afternoon في وقت متأخر من الظهيرة	sunset الغروب

## Lesson (2)

information معلومات	company شركة
website موقع إلكتروني	tour guide مرشد سياحي
price سعر	instructions تعليمات
discount خصم	tour جولة
tickets تذاكر	online عبر الإنترنت
adventures مغامرات	bank details تفاصيل بنكية
credit card بطاقة ائتمانية	regular منظم
breaks استراحات	brains أدمغة/ عقول
routine روتين (عادات متكررة)	hungry جائع
lunchtime وقت العشاء	helpful مفيد

## Lesson (3)

fear خوف	teenager مراهق
heights مرتفعات	scared خائف
cousin ابن عم / أخت عم	secret سر
dome قبعة	hill تل
famous مشهور	calmer أكثر هدوءًا
monument أثر تاريخي	incredible لا يصدق
deer غزال	wolf ذئب
fox ثعلب	bear دب
lake بحيرة	river نهر
puddle بركة ماء	stream مجرى مائي

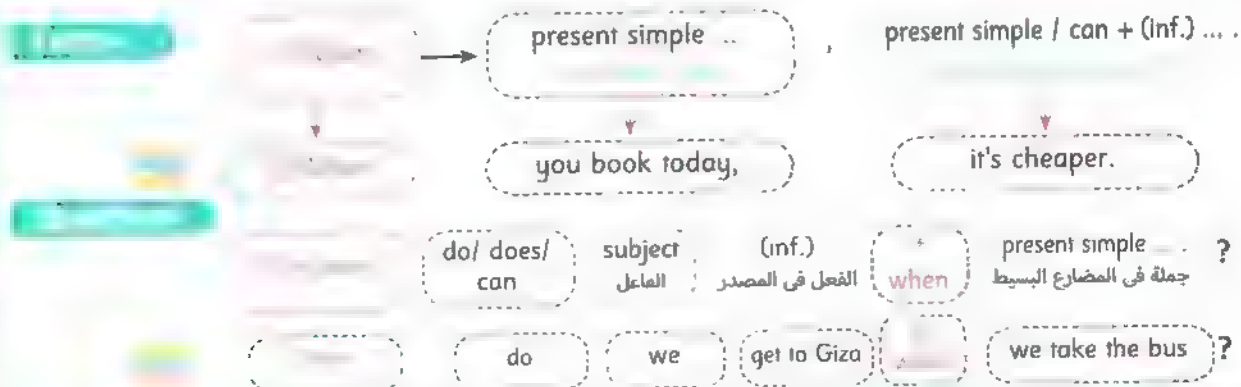
## Lessons (4 &amp; 5)

blog post منشور في مدونة	carnival مهرجان ترفيهي
birthday عيد ميلاد	theaters مسارح
waterfall شلال	simulation محاكاة
St Catherine's monastery دير سانت كاترين	destination وجهة
surprise مفاجأة	fantasy خيال
special خاص	stores محلات
children's section قسم الأطفال	realistic واقعي
busy مزدحم	double room غرفة مزدوجة

## Language Focus

## If/When (Zero conditional)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.





تأكد من حفظك للكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

### Lesson 1

يستكشف الأسواق	يزور متحف قصر المنيل
يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء	يصعد إلى مثذنة باب زويلة
يلتقط صوراً لأجل مشروع مدرسي	مدينة الملاهي
الغروب	منظر
أماكن	عطلة (إجازة)

### Lesson 2

شركة	معلومات
سعر	موقع إلكتروني
بطاقة ائتمانية	تعليمات
خصم	تفاصيل بنكية
استراحات	خوذة
روتين (عادات متكررة)	أدمغة/ عقول
يركز	وقت الغداء

### Lesson 3

خوف	سر
ارتفاعات	منظر
غزال	دب
ثعلب	مجرى مائي
بحيرة	ذئب

### Lessons 4 & 5

ملاهِ متنقلة	منشور في مدونة
محاكاة	مسارح
واقعي	مفاجأة
مزدحم	وجهة

# WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم  
موضوعات  
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write about your vacation:

- I want to visit + (لمكان).
- I want to try some new places.
- I can + (فعل) + on + (يوم).
- If I + (فعل) + I can + (فعل) on + (يوم).

## My vacation to Cairo

I want to visit Cairo next week. I want to try some new places. I can explore the souks on Saturday. I can climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Sunday. I can go quad biking in the desert on Monday. I can ride on a rollercoaster on Tuesday. If I visit the Manial Palace Museum on Wednesday, I can take photos for my school project.

## How to write a blog post about a place you visited:

- Add a title and a date to the blog post.
- What is the place?
- Who is with you?
- Why do you like the place?
- What can you do there?

Tuesday June 3<sup>rd</sup>

## My special day in Alexandria

Today is my birthday and guess where I am. I'm in Alexandria with my friends. I like Alexandria because the weather is always nice and warm. There are many things to see and do here. In the morning, we enjoy swimming in the sea and relaxing on the beach. In the late afternoon, we spend time walking around the shopping malls. We will visit the Alexandria Library, too.

## How to write about holiday destination:

- (اسم المدينة) + is an interesting town Egypt.
- It costs + تكلفة الرحلة + per night, per person in a single/double room.
- There are lots of things to do there.
- You can + (أنشطة تستطيع القيام بها).
- You can also visit + (أشهر المعالم السياحية).

## Luxor - an amazing holiday destination

Luxor is an interesting town in south Egypt. It costs LE 500 per night, per person in a double room to visit Luxor. There are lots of things to do there. You can explore the city souks, go on boat trips on the Nile, or get in an air balloon. You can also visit many of the ancient monuments and temples there.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

- 1 If you ..... (heat) sugar, it ..... (melt).
- 2 If you ..... (feel) tired, you can ..... (go) to bed early.
- 3 When the clouds ..... (be) red, it ..... (mean) there's dust in the sky.
- 4 My English always ..... (get better) when I ..... (study) the lessons again at home.
- 5 You can ..... (tell) me if you ..... (need) anything.

### 2 Put the words in order:

- 1 buy / two T-shirts, / you / free. / get / one / When / you  
.....
- 2 don't water / Pants / if / die / you / them.  
.....
- 3 go / want / by bus. / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can  
.....
- 4 eat / too much cake. / stomach ache / I / if / I can get  
.....
- 5 we / it / my umbrella. / If / can / rains, / use  
.....
- 6 sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it. / When / she  
.....

### 3 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

- 1 We celebrate Sham El-Nessim ..... spring.
- 2 Let's meet outside the school ..... 10:30 am.
- 3 We had a science class ..... Monday.
- 4 They went on a trip to the Red Sea ..... July.
- 5 Great news! I'm having a party ..... my birthday!
- 6 What did you do ..... the weekend?





### Listening

#### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Amira likes playing .....  
a) football      b) basketball      c) tennis      d) chess
- 2 Amira practices on ..... and Sundays.  
a) Fridays      b) Mondays      c) Saturdays      d) Wednesdays
- 3 The ..... is on February 3<sup>rd</sup>.  
a) birthday      b) party      c) race      d) match
- 4 Amira is very .....  
a) sad      b) angry      c) excited      d) tired



### Reading

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Should we ..... the souks on Tuesday?  
a) ride      b) explore      c) take      d) visit
- 2 Let's ..... the Bab Zuwayla minaret first.  
a) take      b) climb      c) go      d) come
- 3 In the carnival, the children's ..... has nine rides.  
a) train      b) park      c) class      d) section
- 4 She can't climb up the hill. She's afraid of .....  
a) heights      b) insects      c) planes      d) snakes

#### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

card – biking – money – guide – helmet

Ramy and his dad are going on a quad .....(1)..... trip next Thursday. Ramy finds a company that books these trips. The company will send a .....(2)..... to meet them at the hotel at 11 pm. They'll be in a group of four. To ride a quad bike, Ramy has to wear a .....(3)..... . Ramy's dad will pay for the trip by credit .....(4)..... .

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Basel and Samer are every ~~excited~~ about their vacation this week. They want to try new places. They will travel to Cairo. They will visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday. They want to go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster! They also want to go quad biking in the desert in Giza on Sunday. Basel wants to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Monday and Samer wants to take photos. They like to watch the sunset over the city. The next morning, they can explore the souks! They are near the minaret.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about the .....  
 a) garden                      b) souk                      c) vacation                      d) minaret
- 2 The underlined word "excited" means .....  
 a) sad                      b) happy                      c) angry                      d) cold
- 3 They want to go quad ..... in the desert.  
 a) baking                      b) packing                      c) backing                      d) biking

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What will they visit on Saturday?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



**Writing**

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

Fridays – Where – on – go – does – she?

محافظه الموفية – إدارة الساحور التعليمية 2024

good – eat – You – can – food – Sharm El-Sheikh – in.

things – are – lots of – in Cairo – There – to do.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

When you study for few hours, you ..... (concentrate) concentrate. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة مصر الجديدة التعليمية 2024

My father arrived ..... (n) six o'clock yesterday. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

**7 Punctuate the following:**

1

Let s go quad biking on monday.

**8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

**"An amazing holiday destination"**

**What is the place? – What can you do there?**

محافظه  
صفحة  
309



Assess your  
progress  
★★★★★

< 50%

«Study again»

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

«Well done!»



photos - try - vacation - Palace - Sunday

Teacher: I'm excited about our ..... this week.

Basel: Me, too. Why don't we ..... new places?

Teacher: Yes, we can visit the Manial ..... Museum.

Basel: Okay. Let's do it on .....

We can take ..... for our school project there, too.

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Habiba wants to go quad (cycling - driving - biking) in the desert in Giza.
- 2 Let's (explore - climb - take) the Bab Zuwayla minaret in Cairo.
- 3 The (view - vacation - sunset) is when the sun comes down.
- 4 I don't like exploring the (deserts - places - souks) because I don't like busy places.
- 5 You need a (bank detail - ticket - theater) to go on the waterfall ride.
- 6 If you face your fear, you (feel - feeling - feel) happy and proud.
- 7 They (were - be - are) happy when they meet.
- 8 Adel was born (in - on - at) 2003.
- 9 Nadia decided to climb the hill (on - on - at) Tuesday.
- 10 You (bought - can buy - buying) what you need when you explore the souks.

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

1 on - We - can - early - go - Wednesday.

.....  
it's - ..... - the bus, - we - take - faster.

.....  
went - ..... - biking - the - quad - in - desert.

4 will - Where - the - meet - guide - us?

.....  
do - ..... - on - get up - you - days - school?

# Theme 2

## Myself and others

أنا والآخرين





# Unit

4

## Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!



### Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, and write about celebrations.

talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.

understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

learn to estimate volumes.

understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.

write a formal email invitation.

research and make a poster about a celebration.

يُحفل بعيد ميلاد الشخص في نفس

يوم كل عام.

يتم الاحتفال بعيد الميلاد في 25 ديسمبر.

يتم الاحتفال بعيد الميلاد في نفس

يوم كل عام.

### Did you know?

In China, people eat **\*noodles** on their birthdays. The noodles are very long to **\*represent** a long life for the person.

The Ancient Egyptians didn't celebrate everyone's birthday. They celebrated the birthdays of the **\*pharaohs**. They also celebrated the pharaohs' **\*coronation** day.

\*noodles

شعرية

\*represent

يمثل / عن

\*pharaohs

فراعنة

\*coronation

تتويج



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



### Main vocabulary



decorate the birthday cake

تُزين كعكة عيد ميلاد



blow up the balloons



let off the fireworks

يُطلق الألعاب النارية



hang up the streamers

يُكّث سلاسل



make a playlist

يُصنّف قائمة مستخدم الآلة



send the invitations

يُرسل الدعوات

### Extra vocabulary

cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	scissors	مقص
string	خيط	candles	شموع
email invitation	دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني	adult	شخص بالغ
yard	حديقة منزل (فناء)	event	حدث

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعلات منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pass يمرر / يناول	passed	tie يربط	tied
need يحتاج	needed	help يساعد	helped
decorate يزين	decorated	ask يطلب من / يسأل	asked
finish ينتهي	finished	love يحب	loved

#### Irregular verbs أفعلات غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hang up يعلق	hung up	blow up ينفخ	blew up
send يرسل	sent	write يكتب	wrote
mean يقصد	meant	choose يختار	chose
find يجد	found	let off يطلق	let off

## Expressions and Phrases

Sure. / Of course.	بالطبع.	Good idea.	فكرة رائعة.
I'm not sure yet.	لست متأكدًا بعد.	RSVP	من فضلك، أرسل ردًا.
have/has to	يجب أن	let me know	يخبرني
really great	رائع حقًا	get dark	يظلم

## Take care!

- يتغير معنى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة حرف جر ويصبح اسمها (phrasal verb).

e.g. blow up - نفخ - hang up - يعنى - let off - يضي

- يتغير الفعل (tie) عند إضافة الـ (ing): تستبدل (e) بـ "y" ثم نضيف (ing).

tie + ing = tying

- (RSVP) هي اختصار للمصطلح الفرنسي (Répondez s'il vous plaît) ويعنى (من فضلك، أرسل ردًا).

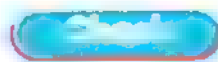
**Tip!** An invitation: You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event.

ل دعوة:



## Important sentences

- \* Everyone is helping for Nesma's birthday. انكل يساعد في عيد ميلاد نسمة.
- \* Youssef is hanging up the streamers. يوسف يعلق الشرائط.
- \* Hani is blowing up the balloons. هاني ينفخ البالونات.
- \* Dalida and Noha are decorating the cake. داليدا ونهى يريان الكعكة.
- \* Amina is sending the invitations. أمينة ترسل الدعوات.



## Choose the correct answer:

- 1 For the party, I made a/an (case - place - firework - invitation) of the best 20 songs nowadays.
- 2 Mom likes to (let off - blow up - decorate - hang up) my birthday cake every year.
- 3 I helped my brother blow up the (streamers - balloons - fireworks - invitations) for the party.
- 4 They (cook - eat - let - sit) off the fireworks.
- 5 Are you (cooking - sending - cleaning - blowing) the invitations?
- 6 My birthday is a special (game - event - stream - yard) for my family.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



## Who is the birthday party for? لمن حفلة عيد الميلاد؟



Hani

Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

مرحبا هاني، أنا أعلق الشرائط من أجل حفل أختي نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟

Youssef



Hani

Sure. What can I do, cousin?

بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكنك أن افعل يا ن عمي؟

Youssef



Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up, too.

هلا مررت بي المقص، من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الشرائط معاً وأحتاج أن أقطع الحبل. هل يمكنك نفخ بعض البالونات؟ نحتاج إلى أن نعلقها أيضاً.



Hani

Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

بالتأكيد! ماذا تفعل أخواتك الأخريات؟ هل يساعدن؟

Youssef



Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?

داليدا ونهى؟ نعم، إنهما نزيهان كعكه بوريه عيد الميلاد.

مسه! هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟



Amina

Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.

مرحبا يوسف، نعم. لكني أرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني للجميع.



Good idea. How many people are coming?

Youssef



Amina

I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.



Who's choosing the music?



Amina

Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.



Amina

And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.

Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

Youssef





### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 They are having a ..... party today for Rana.  
a) school      b) birthday      c) dish      d) family
- 2 ..... is blowing up the balloons.  
a) Fatma      b) Eman      c) Mazen      d) Mai
- 3 My sister Eman is sending ..... to our friends.  
a) photos      b) streamers      c) email invitations      d) balloons
- 4 Mai is making the playlist on the .....  
a) tablet      b) laptop      c) computer      d) phone

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 It is Ahmed's birthday party. We are hanging up the .....  
a) fireworks      b) cakes      c) invitations      d) streamers
- 2 You write a/an ..... to ask a friend to come to a party or event.  
a) decoration      b) order      c) invention      d) invitation
- 3 If you have a problem, you can ask a/an ..... for help.  
a) baby      b) kid      c) child      d) adult
- 4 Can you ..... up the balloons?  
a) cut      b) blow      c) send      d) write
- 5 Ola is going to make a/an ..... on her phone. She really likes music.  
a) album      b) playlist      c) streamer      d) string
- 6 We need an adult to let off the ..... in the sky.  
a) candles      b) fireworks      c) fans      d) cakes
- 7 I need ..... to tie the balloons together.  
a) scissors      b) string      c) candles      d) fireworks
- 8 We use ..... to cut paper.  
a) steamers      b) strings      c) scissors      d) pencils

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blew – decorated – amazing – invitations – dark

السوفة - إدارة شبين الكوم 2024

Last week was my sister's birthday party. It was in our garden. The party was ..... (1) ..... and my sister was very happy. We all helped my sister. My mother ..... (2) ..... the birthday cake. I sent the ..... (3) ..... All her friends came and gave her presents. My brother ..... (4) ..... up the balloons. My father hung up the streamers.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

اخيرة إدارة المدرشين 2024

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. My brother is blowing up some balloons. My mom is making a nice cake. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles to show my sister's age. My father is sending the invitations to our friends. My cousin Sara is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Today, we're having a ..... .  
a) school                      b) birthday party                      c) fun                      d) break
- 2 My sister is ..... years old.  
a) nine                      b) six                      c) ten                      d) fifteen
- 3 My ..... is sending the invitations.  
a) mom                      b) friends                      c) brother                      d) dad

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What is mom making?  
.....
- 5 Who is decorating the birthday cake?  
.....

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

- 1 for – party – my – a playlist – Dalida – made.  
.....

- 2 Hany – blowing – is – up – balloons – the.  
.....

الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

- 3 you – me – the scissors, – Will – pass – please?  
.....

- 4 hanging – my – I'm – up – for – the streamers – sister.  
.....

**Punctuate the following:**

- 1 how many people are coming  
.....

دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

- 2 i m sending everyone email invitations.  
.....



**I'm studying hard for my exams** أنا أدرس بجد من أجل امتحاناتي



**1. Listen and say:**

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary

news	أخبار	hard	بجد	exams	امتحانات
indoors	في الداخل (بالمنزل)	revision	مراجعة	documentary	فيلم وثائقي

### Extra vocabulary

important	هام	exercise	تمارين	already	بالفعل
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	reader	قارئ	history	تاريخ
free time	وقت فراغ	Egyptian celebrations	احتفالات مصرية	music concert	حفلة موسيقية
silly (adj.)	سخيف	armchair	كرسي بذراعين	left (adj.)	متبقى

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
study	studied	worry	worried
cycle	cycled	relax	relaxed
organize	organized	practice	practiced

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
spend	spent	tell	told
show	showed	say	said
wear	wore	read	read

### Expressions and Phrases

What's your news?	ما أخبارك	study hard	يدرك بجد
How are things?	كيف حالك؟	at the moment	في الوقت الحالي
don't worry	لا تقلق	spend time	يقضي وقتاً
get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	do exercise	يتمررن
go running	يمارس رياضة الجري	on the weekends	في إجازات نهاية الأسبوع
a few times a week	بضع مرات في الأسبوع	have fun	يستمتع
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	What's the weather like?	ما حال الطقس؟
take ages	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
feel a bit better	يشعر بتحسن قليل	wait a moment	انتظري لحظة
great fun	ممتعة للغاية	you're right about that	أنت على حق في ذلك
as usual	كالمعتاد	get ... ready	يعد / يجهز

**Take care!**





## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From:	ali@qwikmail.com
To:	eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject:	What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad.



I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! 😊

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything in Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali



## Choose the correct answer:

- ☐ Ali goes (fishing – swimming – cycling – running) on the weekends.
- ☐ Asser is organizing a (class – revision – party – game) at his house.
- ☐ Mom will get Ali the (computer – DVD – laptop – tablet).

## Listening script page 62 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Nesma

Hi, Salma! How are you?



Salma

Hi, Nesma. I'm feeling a bit better, thanks. I'm so sorry I couldn't come to your party. Was it fun? Can you show me the photos?

هيا نسمة. أشعر نَحْسَن قَلِيل، شكرًا. أنا أسفه جدًا لأنني لم أتمكن من الحضور إلى حففتك. هل كاتب ممبعه؟ هل بمكنت أن تريسي الصور؟



Nesma

Yes, of course. Wait a moment, they're on my phone. The party was great fun! Look, here we are.

نعم بالطبع. استعري لحظة، بهم على هاتفي. كاتب، الحففة ممتعة كثيرًا! انظر



Salma

Oh, yes! What are you wearing?



Nesma

I'm wearing a party hat! Do you like it?



Salma

It's silly! Let's see some more. What are Noha and Dalia doing there?

سحيقة! هما تري المربد. ماد، بفعل بهي ود لاهات؟



Nesma

My sisters? They're playing with the balloons! And my cousins, Hani and Youssef, are trying to build a house. They're enjoying it but you can see they aren't very good at it.

حدي؟ بهما بعممان بالهوانا! واهما عصى هاني ويوسف يحاولان بناء مبر، إبهما بسمبغان ولكن بمكنت

Yes, you're right about that! And who is that girl in the red T-shirt?  
She isn't talking to anyone.

نعم، انت على حق في ذلك! ومن هي تلك الفتاة ذات البسطة الاحمر؟ انها لا تتحدث مع احد.

Salma



That's Amina. She's sitting in an armchair reading her book as usual! You know Amina. She's very shy.

هذه امينة، انها تجلس على كرسيها تقرأ كتابها كالمعتاد! انت تعرف امينة، انها خجولة جدا.

Salma



Yes, she is. Where's the food?



You can't see it here. My mom is still getting it ready – you can just see her in the kitchen – look. I have another photo of the birthday cake somewhere ...Yes, here it is.

لا يمكنك ان تراه هنا. امي لا تزال تجهزه - يمكنك ان تراها في المطبخ - انظر. لدي صورة اخرى من كعكة عيد الميلاد في مكان ما ...نعم، هنا هي.

Salma



Wow, Nesma, it looks amazing! Are those strawberries?

واو يا نسمة، تبدو مذهلة! هل تلك فراولة؟



Yes, they are. And don't worry. There's still some birthday cake left. Let's go to my house and have some now.



## Language Focus

### The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

#### Usage

- 1 We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking, often with time phrases like this week, at the moment, and today.

e.g. They are organizing a party this week.

- 2 We also use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

e.g. We are helping to make the birthday cake.

- 3 We also use the present continuous to describe things that are happening in a picture.

e.g. She isn't talking to anyone.

#### Affirmative Form

I  
He/ She/ It  
We/ They/ You

am ('m)  
is ('s)  
are ('re)

+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ...

e.g.



I am studying for my exams.



They're playing with a balloon.

#### Negative Form

I  
He/ She/ It  
We/ They/ You

am not ('m not)  
is not (isn't)  
are not (aren't)

+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ...

e.g.



Amr isn't playing basketball. He is studying.



Mom and Ola aren't enjoying their vacation.



## Topic 1: Present Continuous

<b>Question السؤال</b>	Is Are	he/ she/ it you/ we/ they	+ (nf) _____ + ing ... ?
<b>Answer الإجابة</b>	Yes No,	subject (موضوع)	is / are. isn't / aren't.

Is he staying in France?  
B: Yes, he is.



Are your cousins studying at home?  
B: No, they aren't.



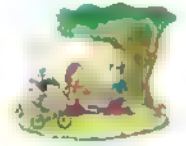
## Topic 2: Wh- questions

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	is are	he/ she/ it you/ we/ they	+ (inf) _____ + ing ... ?
----------------------------	-----------	------------------------------	---------------------------

What is Hani doing?  
B: He's reading a book.



Where are you having a picnic?  
B: We're having a picnic in the park.



## Topic 3: Time

this + (time)  
هكذا + (وقت)

at the moment  
في الوقت الحالي

today  
اليوم

now  
الآن

Check

**Choose the correct answer:**

- I (is – are – am – do) writing a story about my adventures.
- My brother (am – is – are – does) playing video games with his friends.
- Dina and Habiba (am – s – are – do) drawing a beautiful picture in the art class.
- Nader (aren't – isn't – am not – don't) going to the park today.
- Hany and Hana aren't eating breakfast (always – now – yesterday – ago).
- Are we (have – has – having – had) online class today?
- (Does – Do – Is – Are) Mom listening to music?
- How (is – are – does – do) your friend feeling now?
- When are you (study – studying – studies – studied) for the test?
- Where are they going (last – today – often – usually)?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My father likes history, so he always watches ..... movies.  
a) cartoon      b) adventure      c) sport      d) documentary
- 2 I have to clean the house and ..... my books.  
a) cycle      b) exercise      c) organize      d) say
- 3 ..... is my favorite subject. I like to learn about ancient Egypt.  
a) Science      b) History      c) Math      d) Arabic
- 4 Hani is a great ..... He always goes to the library to borrow books.  
a) climber      b) reader      c) teacher      d) worker
- 5 Dad bought a new bike for Eslam because he likes .....  
a) running      b) hanging      c) diving      d) cycling
- 6 To get high marks, you should make a/an ..... before exams.  
a) exercise      b) concert      c) revision      d) weather

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

indoors – exams – reading – outside – going

Yara is a student in grade six. She's studying hard for her .....(1)..... at the moment. She's not spending all her time ..... (2)..... studying. She knows it's important to go ..... (3)..... and do some exercise. She's trying to see her friends a few times a week. She also reads books. She's .....(4)..... "Everything in Ancient Egypt" at the moment because she loves history books.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 sister – My – cooking – food – some – is.  
.....
- 2 not – .. – indoors – spending – my time – all.  
.....
- 3 this – What – Malak – doing – are – week, – you?  
.....
- 4 my dad – cycling – weekend – I'm – this – with.  
.....

الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

Put the correct form of the words between brackets:

- 1 Hana ... (take) a photo at the moment. محافظة دمياط - إدارة دسوط الحديثة التعليمية 2024
- 2 We ... (eat) our lunch at the moment. محافظة دمياط 2024
- 3 They ... (be) coming from school now. محافظة دسوط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024
- 4 We ... (go) to the theater to watch a play now. محافظة الموفية - إدارة شين الكوم التعليمية 2024
- 5 Mom ... (are) baking a chocolate cake.
- 6 What are you ... (do) now? محافظة المنيا - إدارة بني مزار التعليمية 2024
- 7 He ... (don't) playing football now. He's studying.
- 8 I ... (make) a playlist for the birthday party at the moment.
- 9 What ... (are, are) doing now? B: They are playing football.
- 10 The girls ... (cycling) in the park at the moment.
- 11 ... (Be) you studying English at the moment?
- 12 I ... (finish) the book now.
- 13 What ... (he is) doing there?
- 14 A: Are you exercising today? B: Yes, ... (you are).
- 15 I ... (not eat) a cake now. I'm eating biscuits.

### Punctuate the following:

I m reading at the moment

Write a message to your friend Nader to tell him about your weekend. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nader@gmail.com.

الصفحة  
العدد  
309

study hard — get outside — at night

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
<p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>		



### Birthdays around the world أعياد الميلاد حول العالم



#### 1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	present	هدية	birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
breath	نفس	guests	ضيوف	noodles	شعرية

#### Extra vocabulary

party food	طعام الحفلات	age	عمر / سن	countries	دول
USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Britain	بريطانيا	South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا
Holland	هولندا	Nigeria	نيجيريا	India	الهند
Brazil	البرازيل	peaches	حوخ	Chinese	صيني
fire	حريق	flame	لهب	birthday celebrations	احتفالات عيد الميلاد
flour	دقيق	traditions	تقاليد		

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate	celebrated	invite	invited

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
blow out	blew out	burn	burnt

#### Expressions and Phrases

all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	have a party	يقيم حفلة
It is usual	من المعتاد أن	with one breath	في نفس واحد
left to burn	يتركوا حتى يحترقوا	a long life	حياة طويلة
fully grown	ناضج تمامًا	come out of	يخرج من

#### Definitions

adults	الأشخاص البالغون	fully grown people, not children	أشخاص بالغون تمامًا، وليسوا أطفالًا
blow out	ينفخ	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame	أن تخرج الهواء عبر فمك لإيقاف حريق أو لهب
breath	نفس	the air that comes out of your mouth	الهواء الذي يخرج من فمك
noodles	شعرية	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs	قطعة طويلة ورقيقة من الطعام مصنوعة من الدقيق والماء والبيض
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home	الأشخاص الذين ندعوهم إلى منزلك

#### Take care!

لاحظ الفرق بين

(breath) - وهو اسم بمعنى (نفس) وتنطق الـ (θ) / (th).

(breathe) - وهي فعل بمعنى (يتنفس) وتنطق الـ (ð) / (th).





## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### Our birthday celebrations احتفالات أعياد ميلادنا

- 1 Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.



### Birthdays are not just for children

- 2 What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.



سأذكر من أهم الأعياد ميلادنا في مصر. عادةً نأكل كعكة ميلاد ونضع الشموع عليها لنرى أعمارنا. نأخذ بطاقات ميلاد لأصدقائنا وأقاربنا. في بعض البلدان، مثل هولندا، الأطفال يحصلون على هدايا أكبر في أعمار 5، 10، 15 أو 20. في نيجيريا، الأعياد ميلاد الأهم هي عندما يصبح الشخص سنة، 10، و15.

### Blow or burn the candles انفخ الشموع أو أحرقها

3 In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes.

It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.



يعد في كثير من البلدان، الأطفال يحبون أن ينفخوا الشموع على كعكة ميلادهم. من الجيد أن نفعل هذا في نفس واحد. لكن في الهند، لا ينفخون الشموع بل يتركونها تحترق. هل تعلمون؟ في عيد ميلاد طفل في البرازيل، يعطون قطعة الكعكة لأهم شخصين في عائلته، أمه وأبيه. وفي الهند أيضاً، يعطى الطفل عيد ميلاده كعكة لجميع ضيوف في حفلته.

### A longer life حياة أطول

Some countries have different birthday food.

In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life.

And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

بعض البلدان لديها طعام عيد ميلاد مختلف. في الصين، يحبون تناول长寿 (long noodles) أو التفاح في عيد ميلادهم. لماذا؟ لأنهم يعتقدون أن هذه الأشياء يمكن أن تمنحهم حياة طويلة. ولماذا؟ لأنهم يصبحون أكبر سنًا في اليوم الذي ولدوا فيه. فلو كنت 10 عامًا، فسيكون صينيًا 11 عامًا! من ينجب في عيد ميلاده يحصل على أطول حياة.



### Check

- 1 How do we celebrate birthdays in Egypt? .....
- 2 Why is 21 an important birthday in South Africa? .....
- 3 Why do people in China like to eat long noodles? .....

**Tip!** To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for keywords first. What is the topic of the keywords in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

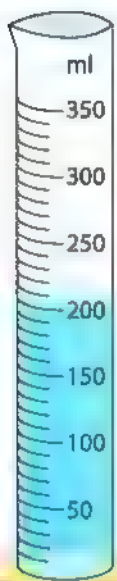


## 3. Read and notice:

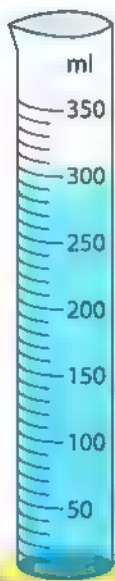
اقرأ ولاحظ:

**Estimating volume**    تقدير الحجم

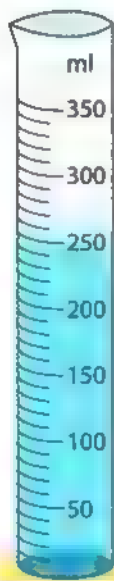
Estimate how much water is in each one. How much water is there in total?



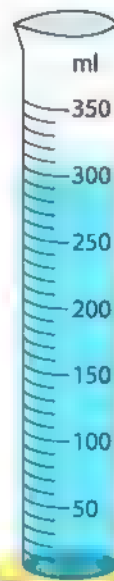
200 ml



290 ml



250 ml



300 ml



160 ml

There's about 1200 ml of water in total.

**Tip!**

When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can **estimate**, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter," not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word "**about**" when giving an estimation.

نستخدم كلمة "تقدير" عندما نحتاج إلى تخمين كمية شيء ما. على سبيل المثال، إذا سألتك أمك: "كم الحليب في الثلاجة؟" يمكنك أن تقول: "هناك حوالي نصف لتر"، وليس: "هناك 487 مليلتر". نستخدم عادةً كلمة "تقريباً" عندما نقدم تقديراً.



## Pronunciation

### Short and long vowels أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة



4. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



/ei/

cake	كعكة (ثورتة)	train	قطار	say	يقول
bake	يخبز	pay	يدفع	stay	يبقى
wait	ينتظر	main	رئيسي	shade	ظل
sail	يبحر	pain	ألم	plate	طبق
tasty	لذيذ				

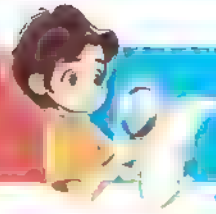
/e/

bed	سرير	head	رأس	shed	كوخ
bread	خبز	get	يحصل على	ledge	الحافة / رف
said	قال	men	رجال	sell	يبيع
pen	قلم جاف	let	يدع	disk	مكتب

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 There's a/an (oven - bed - train - fridge) and a table in the bedroom.
- 2 I have to (say - wait - said - bake) for my sister. We go home together.
- 3 We traveled to Aswan by (train - bike - motorbike - foot).





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- People celebrate birthdays with birthday cakes and ..... on them.  
a) sticks      b) streamers      c) strings      d) candles
- In ....., people like to eat peaches on their birthdays.  
a) USA      b) China      c) Nigeria      d) India
- Long noodles give you a ..... life.  
a) happy      b) rich      c) long      d) sad
- People in China are ..... because they become one on the day they are born.  
a) taller      b) longer      c) happier      d) older

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ..... are people you invite to your home. المنوفاة - إدارة أشمون 2024  
a) Books      b) Trees      c) Guests      d) Pens
- Men wear galabeyas as a/an .....  
a) celebration      b) event      c) tradition      d) birthday
- ..... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs. القاهرة - هين شمس 2024  
a) Peaches      b) Noodles      c) Fish      d) Presents
- ..... are fully grown people, not children. المنوفاة - إدارة أشمون 2024  
a) Adults      b) Children      c) Boys      d) Girls
- Children like to ..... the candles on the birthday cake.  
a) blow out      b) hang up      c) let off      d) breathe
- The number of candles on a birthday cake shows a person's .....  
a) shape      b) age      c) family      d) friends
- I think the tools are in the .....  
a) shade      b) bed      c) shed      d) head
- I want to ..... a boat on the Nile.  
a) sell      b) wait      c) sail      d) stay

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

long – presents – birthday – guests – candles

القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make .....(1)..... cakes for our children. We put .....(2)..... on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of .....(3)..... The guests come and bring .....(4)..... with them. We decorate the house and play the playlist to sing and dance together.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

Birthday celebrations are not the same everywhere. In Egypt, we make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The underlined word "celebrations" means .....  
 a) games                      b) parties                      c) candles                      d) travels
- 2 Children like to ..... the candles on their birthday cakes.  
 a) hang up                      b) let off                      c) give away                      d) blow out
- 3 In ....., the candles are left to burn.  
 a) Brazil                      b) India                      c) Egypt                      d) USA

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 How do people in Egypt celebrate birthdays?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

- 1 world – the – all – Birthdays – are celebrated – over.

الحيرة - إدارة المواصلات 2024

- 2 21 – in – important – South Africa – is – birthday – an.

- 3 blow out – Children – candles – like – to – the.

- 4 10, – If – 11 – is – a Chinese – you're – child!

**Punctuate the following:**

- 1 In china, people like to eat long noodles

- 2 chinese people are often older



### 1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

#### Main vocabulary

formal (adj.)	رسمي	celebration	احتفال	Mother's Day	عيد الأم
local community	المجتمع المحلي	opening phrase	عبارة افتتاحية	closing phrase	عبارة ختامية
character	شخصية	prize	جائزة	costume	زي تكتري

#### Extra vocabulary

polite (adj.)	مؤدب	dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي	special (adj.)	مميز/خاص
event	حدث	details	تفاصيل	school hall	قاعة المدرسة
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	reason	سبب	request	طلب
poster	ملصق	design	تصميم	family members	أفراد الأسرة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
receive	يتسلم receive	attend	يحرص attend
invite	يدعو invite	reply	يرد repl
organize	ينظم organize	confirm	يؤكد confirmed

#### Expressions and Phrases

(be) addressed to ...	موجه لـ ...	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
by February 20	قبل العشرين من شهر فبراير	yours sincerely	تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
dress up	يرتدي ملابس (يتنكر)	figure out	يكشف

### Check

#### Choose the correct answer:

- I have to wear (costly / expensive / cheap / ordinary) clothes to work.
- I give my mother a present on (Pock Day / Mother Day / School Day / Child's Day).
- I need your (buy / please / address / look) to send you the order.
- "Harry Potter" is my favorite (that / character / name / reason) in the story.



## Writing



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From:	celebrationgroup@newschool.com
To:	Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject:	Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



Happy Mother's Day



- 1 Who is the invitation addressed to? ..... SB
- 2 What is the celebration? ..... SB
- 3 When and where is the celebration? ..... SB



**Tip!** We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well.  
We use polite language, correct spelling, and grammar in formal writing.

### Formal language

#### لغة رسمية

Sincerely, بمقتضى محول قانو لاجرام

Dear, عزيزي

celebration احتفال

attend يحتضر

confirm

### Informal language

#### لغة غير رسمية

Bye for now, وداعا الآن

Hi! هلا

party حفلة

come to تأتي الى

say yes or no

### How to write an invitation in a formal language

#### كيف تكتب دعوة بلغة رسمية

From: عنوان البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل

To: عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي تدعوه

Subject: عنوان الدعوة (مناسبة الدعوة)

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية

\*Dear Mr Ahmed,

Reason for writing (What the celebration is for): (سبب الكتابة)

\*I am writing to invite you to our school's Mothers Day celebration this year

Where it is المكان

\*Location: School Hall

When it is (time and date) الوقت

\*Date: Sunday March 21

\*Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

A request (When the person has to reply): طلب

\*Please reply by February 20

Closing phrase عبارة ختامية

\*Yours sincerely,

توقيع (اسم) الراسل

\*Randa Gamal



## Project



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



### Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Dress up as your favorite character  
from your favorite book.

Figure out which character your friends are  
from the clothes they are wearing.

We have an amazing prize for the  
best costume.

Come and try our drinks  
and delicious snacks!

Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall  
Family members all welcome!

حفلة يوم الكتاب

لنستمتع بحفلة يوم الكتاب من خلال ارتداء ملابس من قصصنا المفضلة

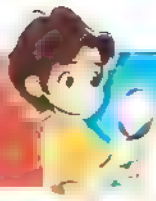
لدينا حصة مذهبة لأفضل زي سكر

هنا وجوب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!

الخميس الساعة ٢ ظهرا بقاعة المدرسة

يرحب بكل أفراد العائلة!





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Please, call me to ..... if you can come or not.  
a) confirm      b) forget      c) hope      d) sail
- Next week is our school's Mother's Day .....  
a) celebration      b) information      c) pollution      d) population
- We are wearing ..... in the party.  
a) costumes      b) celebrations      c) fireworks      d) invitations
- Book Day is a great ..... to celebrate.  
a) tradition      b) prize      c) poster      d) event

دمياط 2024

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا 2024

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

snacks – prize – dress – Mother's – Book

I'm Sara. I'm in grade six. I like reading. I will attend the ..... (1) ..... Day party. I will go with my friends. We will ..... (2) ..... up as our favorite characters from our favorite books. There is an amazing ..... (3) ..... for the best costume. There are drinks and delicious ..... (4) ..... at the party. The party will be next Thursday.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Eman. I'm an English teacher. At school, we are inviting some people to attend the Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21. We love our school and our students. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. Students will dress up as their favorite characters from their favorite books. We will have an amazing prize for the best costume. Some students will sing some traditional songs.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Eman is a teacher of .....  
a) Arabic      b) English      c) math      d) science
- The underlined word "attend" means .....  
a) celebrate      b) read about      c) come to      d) say yes or no
- We are ..... people from the local community.  
a) teaching      b) speaking      c) drawing      d) inviting

### Answer the following questions:

4 When is the celebration?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 attend – can – celebration – the – You.

2 local community – people – the – We – from – are – inviting.

3 a prize – the best – We – costume – have – for.

الذهبية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

4 are – We – special – a – day – organizing.



Punctuate the following:

let's celebrate reading



Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your teacher Mr Amr inviting him to the Book Day Party. Your name is Nesma and your email address is nesma@gmail.com. Your teacher's email is amr@gmail.com.

مجالس  
صفحة  
310

organize – local community – very happy

From :	
To :	
Subject :	
<p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p></p>	





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

decorate the birthday cake يزين كعكة عيد ميلاد	blow up the balloons يفتح البالونات
let off the fireworks يطلق الألعاب النارية	hang up the streamers يعلق الشرائط
make a playlist يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني	send the invitation يرسل الدعوات
scissors مقص	string خيوط
candles شموع	adult شخص بالغ
yard حديقة منزل (فناء)	event حدث
cousin إبن العم / الخال	email invitation دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني

## Lesson (2)

hard بجد	exams امتحانات
revision مراجعة	documentary فيلم وثائقي
indoors بالداخل	news أخبار
important هام	exercise تمارين
reader قارئ	history تاريخ
free time وقت الفراغ	music concert حفلة موسيقية
Egyptian celebrations احتفالات مصرية	silly سخيف

## Lesson (3)

birthday cards بطاقات عيد الميلاد	breath نفس
guests ضيوف	noodles شعرية
flame لهب	fire حريق
Chinese صيني	USA الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
party food طعام الحفلات	age عمر
peaches خوخ	shade ظل
plate طبق	shed كوخ
ledge حافة / رف	tasty للذيذ

## Lessons (4 & 5)

formal رسمي	local community المجتمع المحلي
opening phrase جملة افتتاحية	closing phrase جملة ختامية
character شخصية	costume زي تكتري
prize جائزة	Mother's Day عيد الأم
polite مؤدب	dear عزيزي
school hall قاعة المدرسة	email address عنوان البريد الإلكتروني
request طلب	poster ملصق
design تصميم	reason سبب

## Language Focus

### The Present Continuous Tense

#### Affirmative Form:

I	am (am)	+ (inf.) + ing ...
He/ She/ It	is (is)	
We/ They/ You	are (are)	

eg She's studying for her exams this week.

#### Negative Form:

I	am not (am not)	( )
He/ She/ It	isn't (is not)	
We/ They/ You	aren't (are not)	

eg They aren't enjoying their vacation.

#### Yes/No question

(Question)	Is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) + ing
	Are	we/ they/ you	

(Answer)	Yes,	subject	is/ are.
	No,		isn't/ aren't.

eg A Is he working in France? B Yes, he is.

#### Wh- question

Wh- word	is/ are	subject	+ (inf.) + ing
----------	---------	---------	----------------

What are you doing? B I'm reading a book.



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

### Lesson 1

.....	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	.....	ابن العمر / الخال
.....	ينفخ البالونات	.....	خيطة
.....	يطلق الألعاب النارية	.....	مقص
.....	يعلق الشرائط	.....	شموع
.....	يعد قائمة تشغيل أغاني	.....	شخص ناضج
.....	يرسل الدعوات	.....	حدث

### Lesson 2

.....	امتحانات	.....	يجد
.....	هام	.....	في الداخل (بالمزمل)
.....	بالفعل	.....	مراجعة
.....	فيلم وثائقي	.....	تاريخ
.....	قارئ	.....	وقت فراغ

### Lesson 3

.....	شموع	.....	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
.....	ضيوف	.....	شعرية
.....	العمر (السن)	.....	دول
.....	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	.....	نفس
.....	جنوب إفريقيا	.....	ظل
.....	نيجيريا	.....	طعام الحفلات
.....	الهند	.....	كوخ
.....	بالغون	.....	صيني
.....	حريق	.....	لهب
.....	حرارة	.....	تقاليد

### Lessons 4 & 5

.....	رسمي	.....	المجتمع المحلي
.....	عبارة افتتاحية	.....	عيد الأم
.....	زي تكرر	.....	جائزة
.....	شخصية	.....	عبارة ختامية

# WRITING TIME

بجميع لأهم  
موضوعات  
الوحدة



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write about birthday preparations:

- Today is + اسم شخص + birthday.
- نشاط يساعد به الشخص في عيد الميلاد + is + (اسم شخص).
- نشاط يساعد به هؤلاء الأشخاص في عيد الميلاد + are + (شخص).
- A lot of people are coming today  
It's going to be fun

## "My sister's birthday"

Today is my sister Hana's birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

## How to write about a birthday celebration in a country:

- In (اسم بلد), it is (عادات البلد) ...
- In (اسم بلد أخرى), it is (عادات البلد) ...
- In (اسم بلد مختلفة), it is (عادات البلد) ...

## "Birthday celebrations around the world"

In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays, even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15, or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, or 15.

## How to write a formal invitation email:

- Dear
- I am writing to invite you to (سبب الدعوة).
- Date :
- Time :
- Location :
- Please reply by (وقت) to confirm if you can attend the (مناسبة).

From : nadia@gmail.com

To : nahla@gmail.com

Subject : Wedding Party

Dear Mrs. Nahla,

I am writing to invite you to my sister's wedding party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Monday, October 17<sup>th</sup>. Family members and friends will be there.

Date: Monday, October 17<sup>th</sup>

Time: 6:00 to 9:00 pm

Location: Jewel Garden, City Center

Please reply by September 5 to confirm if you can attend the wedding party.

### 1 Match the words to their meanings:

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| 1 adults   | a. the air that comes out of your mouth                        |
| 2 blow out | b. a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs |
| 3 breath   | c. fully grown people, not children                            |
| 4 noodles  | d. people you invite to your home                              |
| 5 guests   | e. to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame      |

### 2 Put the words in order.

- 1 playing / Are / a / they / game?  
.....
- 2 wearing / a / hat./ I'm / new  
.....
- 3 sisters / My / cooking / food./ some / are  
.....
- 4 your / taking / dad / Is / photos?  
.....
- 5 helping / Laila and Mona / your / are / mom.  
.....

### 3 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verb:

- 1 Malak ..... her project on Egyptian celebrations this week. (finish)
- 2 The students ..... hard for a music concert. (practice)
- 3 Where ..... your brother ..... in the USA? (study)
- 4 We ..... our lunch at the moment. (eat)
- 5 ..... Basel and Amir ..... a funny movie? (watch)
- 6 I ..... in the basketball match today. I have too much school work. (not play)





## Listening



6

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Today, it's my ..... birthday.  
a) father's      b) sister's      c) brother's      d) mother's
- 2 I'm hanging up the ..... for the party.  
a) balloons      b) streamers      c) strings      d) songs
- 3 I cut the string with .....  
a) knife      b) scissors      c) fork      d) hand
- 4 The ..... are bright and colorful.  
a) scissors      b) cakes      c) balloons      d) presents

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 He blew out the ..... with one breath.  
a) candy      b) camel      c) candle      d) carpet
- 2 Youssef is ..... up the streamers.  
a) blowing      b) decorating      c) sending      d) hanging
- 3 "....." are people you invite to your home.  
a) Books      b) Trees      c) Guests      d) Pens
- 4 My brother is twenty years old. He is a/an .....  
a) baby      b) old      c) adult      d) child

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الريتوت التعليمية 2024

محافظة البحيرة - مشاة القاطر التعليمية 2024

محافظة المنوفية - أشمون التعليمية 2024

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ميا القمح التعليمية 2024

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

cake – blowing – making – happy – hanging

محافظة دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

I'm Israa. Today, we are having a nice party. It is my birthday. We are very .....  
(1) ..... My brother is ..... (2) ..... up the streamers. My sister is ..... (3) .....  
up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday ..... (4) ..... My cousin  
Sara is sending email invitations to our friends.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

محافظة البحيرة - إدارة مشاة بكر التعليمية 2024

I am Nour. I study hard to get high marks in the exams. But I don't spend all my time indoors. I sometimes go out and play sports. I go running every morning. I go cycling on the weekends. On holidays, I usually go and see my friends. We sometimes play video games or go to the park to enjoy our time there. Playing sports and doing exercises make me clever and ready to study my lessons.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Nour goes running .....  
a) at night      b) in the morning      c) on holidays      d) now
- 2 Nour plays ..... games with his friends.  
a) basketball      b) video      c) radio      d) football
- 3 The underlined word "there" refers to the .....  
a) park      b) garden      c) school      d) farm

Answer the following questions:

- 4 Why does Nour study his lessons hard? .....
- 5 When does Nour usually see his friends? .....



### Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

- 1 this – Hamza – reading – week – a history – book – is. محافظة البحيرة – إدارة المدرسين التعليمية 2024
- 2 birthday – Are – the – you – decorating – cake? .....
- 3 a special – We – celebration – are – preparing – for. ....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Where ..... (be) they spending their vacation? محافظة القنيطرة – إدارة لتيوب التعليمية 2024
- 2 The boys ..... (play) football at the moment. محافظة دمياط 2024

Punctuate the following:

1

who is going to make a playlist محافظة البحيرة – إدارة المدرسين التعليمية 2024

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



5

"My birthday party"

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الوايل التعليمية 2024

blow up balloons – make a playlist



Assess your progress  
★★★★★

< 50%

«Goudy digne»

50 - 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Well done!

173



# NOVEMBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hana is so excited about her ..... in Cairo this week.  
a) places      b) theme park      c) vacation      d) sunset
- 2 Let's ride a rollercoaster in the .....  
a) Cairo souks      b) minaret      c) theme park      d) desert
- 3 The \*mosque has a very high .....  
a) market      b) mountain      c) minaret      d) museum  
محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي التعليمية 2024
- 4 We can visit the Manial ..... Museum and take some photos.  
a) Palace      b) House      c) Bab      d) Boat
- 5 She went quad ..... in the desert in Giza.  
a) hiking      b) biking      c) climbing      d) running
- 6 Fatima decided to ..... her fear of heights and climb the mountain.  
a) face      b) explore      c) visit      d) ride
- 7 Nadia wants to take some ..... for the school project.  
a) rollercoasters      b) museums      c) places      d) photos
- 8 The ..... is the time when the sun comes down.  
a) morning      b) afternoon      c) sunset      d) evening
- 9 My sister is ..... the birthday cake for the big party.  
a) blowing up      b) hanging up      c) sending      d) decorating
- 10 Who is sending the birthday .....?  
a) invitations      b) streamers      c) scissors      d) playlist
- 11 Adel is the best one to make the ..... for the party. He knows the best songs.  
a) cakes      b) fireworks      c) invitations      d) playlist
- 12 Don't allow children to let off the .....  
a) cakes      b) fireworks      c) invitations      d) candles
- 13 Can you ..... up the balloons?  
a) cut      b) blow      c) send      d) write  
محافظة الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
- 14 ..... are people you invite to your home.  
a) Adults      b) Candles      c) Children      d) Guests
- 15 ..... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs  
a) Cakes      b) Noodles      c) Cookies      d) Cupcakes
- 16 Let's climb the Bab Zuweila .....  
a) minaret      b) project      c) market      d) souk  
محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024
- 17 We want to go to the theme park to ride on a .....  
a) rollercoaster      b) museum      c) minaret      d) souk  
محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر التعليمية 2024
- 18 I always help to blow up the .....  
a) streamers      b) balloons      c) fireworks      d) invitations  
محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024



19 We use ..... to cut paper.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير التعليمية 2024

a) plates                      b) forks                      c) spoons                      d) scissors

My cousin is old enough to ..... off the fireworks. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المتبره أول التعليمية 2024

a) decorate                      b) send                      c) let                      d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

breaks – list – study – concentrate – proud

People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't .....(1)..... when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can .....(2)..... better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a .....(3)..... of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel .....(4)..... .

exciting – fantasy – rides – theaters – understand محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a .....(1)..... world – it's really .....(2)..... . There's a lot to see and do here. There are amazing .....(3)..... to try like the rollercoaster and .....(4)..... where you can watch shows.

blow out – cakes – hang out – Brazil – guests

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small .....(1)....., sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to .....(2)..... the candles on their birthday cakes. In .....(3)....., they give the first piece of their birthday cake to their mom and dad. In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the .....(4)..... at their party first.

playlist – Let – balloons – fireworks – streamers محافظة البحيرة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

Today, we are having a party for my sister's birthday. We are going to do many things. I'm blowing up some .....(1)..... . My sister is hanging up the .....(2)..... . My brother is making a .....(3)..... on his phone. My father is going to let off the .....(4)..... .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 the – forest – Deer – little – runs – through.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

2 explores – Mom – souks – the – Mondays – on.

3 else – what – Great – we – do – can?

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

4 a rollercoaster – We – at – the theme park – ride on.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية 2024

5 are – today – doing – What – you?

محافظة البحيرة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

6 mom – cake – My – sister – a nice – for – made – my.

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قلوب التعليمية 2024

7 are – this – doing – **What** – you – week?

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة روض القرق التعليمية 2024

8 you – pass – **Can** – the glue, – please – me?

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الرقايق التعليمية 2024

9 traveling – to London – you – **Are** – tomorrow?

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة المطرية التعليمية 2024

**14** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 Can we go faster if we ..... (**took**) a taxi?

2 If we buy the ticket today, it ..... (**be**) cheaper.

3 You can tell me when you ..... (**be**) ready.

4 If he (**press**) ..... the button, the machine works.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

5 My sister bought mom a gift ..... (**at**) Mother's Day.

6 I never wake up late ..... (**on**) 10 am.

7 I usually go to Alexandria ..... (**on**) summer.

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

8 If you need any help, you ..... (**could**) ask me.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

9 The boys ..... (**ride**) their bikes now.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة مشول التعليمية 2024

10 What ..... (**be**) Ola doing at the moment?

11 Are you ..... (**plan**) for your exams this month?

12 Look! He ..... (**play**) tennis.

محافظة الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

13 ..... (**be**) your parents celebrating your birthday today?

14 Moaz ..... (**be not**) spending all his day indoors.

15 I ..... (**be finish**) a book about Ancient Egypt today.

16 Amina ..... (**read**) a book in an armchair now.

محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلوين التعليمية 2024

17 He was born ..... (**on**) March.

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024

18 We never go to school ..... (**at**) Friday.

محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة مرج العرب التعليمية 2024

19 We are ..... (**eat**) our lunch now.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الشيخ زايد التعليمية 2024

20 Are they ..... (**watch**) a funny movie?

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

**15** Punctuate the following:

1 I m excited about my vacation

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

2 who is going to make a playlist

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024

3 go and get me some candles

4 are the boys riding their bikes now

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

5 what time will he meet us

6 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in egypt

7 some countries have different birthday food

8 In china, people like to eat long noodles

# Unit

5

## Amazing journeys

سجرات رائعة

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

understand the difference between the sounds /dʒ/ and /ʒ/.

listen to understand specific details in a text.

write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

يسمع بسمع تفاصيل دقيقة في النص.  
كتب بدونك بوضع بغير عن مسافة واحدة بمرحبة.  
يوم بغير بغير ويتبع بغير عن بغير بغير.

### Did you know?

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's \**walk* from Tierra del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

### Find out!

The \**record* for the longest journey by sea was set by Reid Stowe, who sailed across the ocean in a sea journey that \**lasted* 1152 days.

\* walk

جولة

\* record

رقم قياسي

\* lasted

استمررت





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



### Main vocabulary



go on a journey

تذهب في رحلة طويلة



ride a camel

يركب حملا



take a trip

تقوم برحلة قصيرة



go on a voyage

تذهب في رحلة بحرية



sail by ship

تبحر بالسفينة



travel by train

يسافر بالقطار

### Famous explorers from the past



Ibn Battuta

ابن بطوطة

1304 – 1368



Vasco da Gama

فاسكو دا جاما

1460 – 1524



Marco Polo

ماركو بولو

1254 – 1324

### Extra vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)	vacation	إجازة
Croatia	كرواتيا	museum	متحف	island	جزيرة
Korcula	جزيرة كورتشولا	travels	سفرات / رحلات	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
Italian	إيطالي	the West	الغرب	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
experiences	تجارب	Venice	فينيسيا	Iran	إيران
Hormuz	مصيق هرمز	ancient	قديم	objects	أغراض



## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
remember	remember	sail	sailed
travel	traveled	imagine	imagined

## Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
read	read	write	wrote
get to	got to	fly	flew
ride	rode	make	made

## Expressions and Phrases

That's a good idea.	هذه فكرة جيدة.	one of the first people	من أوائل الناس
get to	يصل إلى	far away	بعيدًا
take years	يستغرق سنوات	go across	يذهب عبر
What an adventure!	يالها من مغامرة!	come to life	تعود للحياة

## Important sentences

\* Marco Polo is a famous Italian explorer.

ماركو بولو مستكشف إيطالي مشهور.

\* Marco Polo was one of the first people from the West to visit China in the 13<sup>th</sup> century.

كان ماركو بولو أول شخص من الغرب يزور الصين في القرن الـ 13 الميلادي.

\* Traveling to China was very difficult in those days. He went on a long voyage by sea.

كان السفر إلى الصين صعب جدًا في تلك الأيام. ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة طويلة عبر البحر.

\* Marco Polo Museum is on an Island in Croatia called Korcula.

يقع متحف ماركو بولو على جزيرة كورتشولا في كرواتيا.

\* The museum had a lot of things from ancient China.

احتوى المتحف على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة.

## Choose the correct answer:

- Sailing by (boat - bus - ship - car) was an amazing experience.
- Nadia (took - traveled - went - rode) on a journey last weekend.
- Ibn Battuta was a famous (guide - explorer - dancer - sailor).
- She enjoyed riding the (boat - ship - camel - train) across the desert.
- I (take - ride - sail - write) a trip once a week.
- I think they (traveled - rode - sailed - made) by train.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

اسمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Rana

What are you reading, Injy?

Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

أهلاً يا رانا، هذا هو يوميات سفري. أريد أن أتذكر عائلتي في كرواتيا منذ بضع سنوات.

Injy



Rana

That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

فكرة جيدة يا رانا. ما كان أفضل شيء في العطلات؟

Injy



I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.



Really? Where is that?

Injy



It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum – all about the travels of Marco Polo.

هذا على جزيرة في كرواتيا تسمى كوركولا. ذهبنا لزيارة متحف ريتش عن كل سفريات ماركو بولو.



Who was Marco Polo?

Injy



He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

هو مستكشف إيطالي وهو من أول من زار الصين بقرصين من الشرق. ذهب هناك في القرن 13 وكتب

يوميات عن تجارته. تسمى 'رحلات ماركو بولو'.





How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

It was very difficult – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

كان الأمر صعباً جداً. استغرق رحلته سنوات. أسافر ماركو بولو في رحلة طويلة عبر البحر. استغرقه من فينيسيا لجزيرة كورسولا ثم إلى إيران، عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز، توقف وذهب عبر الصحراء. ركب حملاً طوال الطريق إلى الصين.

Injy



Wow, what an adventure!

Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

نعم، وتخيل وصولي إلى الصين قبل 800 عام تقريباً. كان الأمر مختلفاً جداً وقتها. المتحف يحتوي على العديد من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعلت قصة ماركو بولو تتحول إلى حقيقة.

Injy



### Take care!

تلمذ travel قد تأتي بمعنى «تألمذ»

e.g. Marco Polo **traveled** to China. (تلمذ)

It's my **travel** diary. (المر)

(trip – journey – voyage) هبت قروي بي

e.g. We had an amazing **trip** yesterday.

trip تعني سفر من مكان إلى آخر، من غير أن استمتع أو تلمذ، مثل زيارة صديقة.

e.g. The **journey** to America was fantastic.

journey

e.g. We went on a long **voyage** by sea.

voyage

diary

diary

مر

e.g. He sailed to China **by** ship.

# Practice



## Lesson 1



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Rania has an interesting travel .....  
a) picture      b) book      c) ticket      d) diary
- 2 She wants to remember her family's vacation in .....  
a) France      b) Italy      c) Croatia      d) London
- 3 They visited the ..... Museum.  
a) Marco Polo      b) Egyptian      c) History      d) Grand
- 4 The museum is on a/an .....  
a) mountain      b) island      c) desert      d) building

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They sailed by .....  
a) train      b) ship      c) plane      d) bus  
محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق التعليمية 2024
- 2 Ahmed wrote a ..... about his travels.  
a) dry      b) diary      c) playlist      d) dome  
محافظة الشرقية - إدارة سان الحجر التعليمية 2024
- 3 Salem ..... a trip every year.  
a) takes      b) rides      c) sails      d) travels  
محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق التعليمية 2024
- 4 My sister wants to go on a long ..... next week. She loves the sea.  
a) voyage      b) experience      c) camel      d) train
- 5 I'd never ride a ..... in the desert. I'm afraid of them.  
a) bus      b) ship      c) camel      d) boat
- 6 Ibn Battuta is a famous ..... from the 14<sup>th</sup> century.  
a) sailor      b) doctor      c) villager      d) explorer
- 7 Marco Polo wrote a diary about his .....  
a) museum      b) experiences      c) friends      d) family
- 8 When Noha reads her diary, she remembers her ..... to Italy.  
a) travel      b) family      c) century      d) explorer
- 9 A ..... is 100 years.  
a) vacation      b) journey      c) trip      d) century
- 10 The Museum of Marco Polo is full of ..... objects.  
a) modern      b) small      c) new      d) ancient

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

train – voyage – Travels – century – explorer

Marco Polo was an Italian .....(1)..... and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> .....(2)..... and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The .....(3)..... of Marco Polo". Marco Polo's journey to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long .....(4)..... by sea.



## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived in the 14<sup>th</sup> century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore the world and visit the most important Muslim cities to learn about different cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and it lasted for 29 years. He visited places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, and boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journey. His writings helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was .....  
a) 21                      b) 29                      c) 75                      d) 14
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
a) Ibn Battuta              b) the journey              c) the camel              d) Egypt
- In his journey, he used .....  
a) cars                      b) trains                      c) planes                      d) camels

## Answer the following questions:

- Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world? .....
- Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

a long – by – Marco – sea – Polo – went on – voyage.

took – Two – years – China – to – journey.

is – The sea – called – on – Korcula – an island.

Polo – was – Marcon – Italian – an – explorer.

## 6 Punctuate the following:

1 How did people get to china those days

2 What are you reading, injy



## Lesson 2



### A Surprising Discovery اكتشاف مدهش



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

sculptures	منحوتات	clay	طين / صلصال	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
tools	أدوات	civilization	حضارة	mystery	سر غامض / لغز

#### Extra vocabulary

surprising (adj.)	مفاجئ	discovery	اكتشاف	culture	ثقافة
local people	السكان المحليون	Nok	قرية نوك	Nigeria	نيجيريا
West Africa	غرب إفريقيا	unusual	غير عادي	objects	أشياء
humans	بشر	style	طراز / شكل	complicated	معقد
position	وضعية	quality	جودة	incredible	مدهل
similar	مشابه / مماثل	iron	حديد / معدن	stone	صخري / حجري
farming tools	أدوات زراعية	art	فن	CE	الحقبة الميلادية
metal	معدن	ability	قدرة	Ifè people	شعب «الإيف»
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	sticky	لصق	wet	ممتل

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
agree	agreed	believe	believed
affect	affected	explain	explained

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
find	found	go	went
make	made	understand	understood

## Expressions and Phrases

in a sitting position	في وضعية الجلوس	find out more	يكتشف المزيد
an area of hundreds of kilometers	منطقة على مساحة مئات الكيلومترات	most likely	على الأرجح
work iron and stone	يشكل الحديد والحجر	works of art	أعمال فنية
the later Ife people	شعب "الأيڤ" اللاحق	famous for	مشهور بـ
written information	معلومات مكتوبة	call ... after	يسمى على اسم
learn about	يتعلم عن	made from	مصنوع من

## Definitions

clay	a type of earth that is sticky when wet	نوع من الأرض يكون لزوجًا حينما يكون مبتلًا
tools	objects we use to make or do things	أعراض تستخدمها لصنع أو عمل أشياء
sculptures	art made from stone or wood	فن مصنوع من الحجارة أو الخشب
archaeologist	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground	الشخص الذي يقوم بدراسة أشياء قديمة جدًا وجدها أسفل الأرض
mystery	something that people do not understand or cannot explain	شيء لا يفهمه الناس أو لا يمكن تفسيره

## Take care!

99 This knife is made of iron.

iron

This is an iron knife.

This sculpture is made of stone.

stone

Look at this sculpture.

## Choose the correct answer:

(Scientists / Archaeologists / Artists / Teachers) discovered many sculptures.

Carpenters need (carpenter / master / human / civilization) to fix chairs.

Ancient Egyptians had a great (tool / master / human / civilization) of 7,000 years.

I can't solve this math problem; it's (easy / far / complicated / surprising).

No one knew how the ship disappeared. It's a/an (ship / master / human / civilization).





## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.



A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

سلكه لآكتاف مرمية. ووجدوا العديد من المنحوتات الجميلة في منطقة تقع قرب نوك.

فقدوا بعد ذلك المنطقة، ووجدوا العديد من الأدوات الحديدية والحداد على عمق الأقدام على أن هذه هي الأرجح تأتي من حضارة.

They called this culture the “Nok” civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures affected the famous works of art by the later Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11<sup>th</sup> to the 15<sup>th</sup> century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.

سموا هذه الثقافة اسم «حضارة نوك» على اسم قرية نوك حيث تم العثور عليها. يعتقد البعض أن منحوتات

Which two cultures are mentioned?

SB

2 Where did the name “Nok” come from?



## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.

نستخدم البسيط لمحدث عن الافعال او المواقف المنتهية في الماضي

## 1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):  
rain - rained

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d):  
use → used

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (e) ،  
يُحذف الـ (e) ويضاف إليها الـ (ed):  
study → studied

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك +  
حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع  
مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:  
stop → stopped

## 2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go	يذهب went	find	يجد found	am/ is	يكون was
has/ have	يملك had	make	يصنع made	are	يكون were

## Affirmative Form

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل) Subject



Ali traveled to the desert last vacation.



Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.

## Negative Form

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + didn't + Subject

e.g. We didn't have a vacation two years ago.

## Yes/No questions

### Question السؤال

A. Did + subject + (inf.) ...? ...؟ الفعل في المصدر + الموضوع + Did

### Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

did.

didn't.

e.g. A Did Dalida find her book?

B: Yes, she did.

B: No, she didn't.

## Wh- questions

Wh- word

Q. 1

subject

(inf.)

...?

B: Subject (الشاعر) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ....

e.g. A: Where did you find your pencil case?

B: I found it in my bag.

## Time

yesterday أمس - last الماضي - ago منذ - in the past في الماضي

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Eslam (goes - went - go - going) to the cinema last night.
- 2 Mom (bakes - baking - bakes - bake) a delicious cake for her birthday a week ago.
- 3 My family (have - has - having - had) a picnic in the park last Sunday.
- 4 My brother (didn't - don't - doesn't - do) have his breakfast yesterday.
- 5 My team didn't (win - was - won - winning) the game last week.
- 6 Dad didn't (slept - sleep - sleeps - sleeping) well.
- 7 (Does - Is - Did - Are) you wake up early this morning?
- 8 Did Ola (goes - go - went - going) to the store yesterday?
- 9 When (did - does - is - do) dad come home last night?
- 10 Where (does - did - is - are) you find the keys yesterday?

## فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط Verb to "be" in the past simple

Verb to "be" changes according to the subject in the past simple.

يُعبّر فعل «يكون» باختلاف الفاعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

### Affirmative Form

I / He / She / It + **was** ...

eg Heba **was** at my birthday party last week.

We / They / You + **were** ...

eg The kids **were** at the club two days ago.

### Negative Form

I / He / She / It + **was not (wasn't)** ...

eg Dad **wasn't** at home yesterday.

We / They / You + **were not (weren't)** ...

eg My friends **weren't** at school last week.

### Yes/No question

Question: السؤال

Was

Were

I / he / she / it ...?

we / they / you ...?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,

No,

subject (فاعل)

**was / were.**

**wasn't / weren't.**

eg Q: **Was** she happy in New York?

B: Yes, she **was**.

eg Q: **Were** you at home an hour ago?

B: No, we **weren't**.

### Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهام

**was**

**were**

I / he / she / it

we / they / you

...?

eg: A: Where **was** he yesterday?

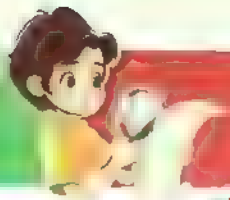
B: He **was** at school.

### Check

Choose the correct answer:

- I (is - **was** - were) happy to see my friend yesterday.
- Nawal (is - does - **was** - were) the tallest student in her class last year.
- The players (are - **is** - does - **were**) tired after playing all day.
- The students (are - **are** - **aren't** - **wasn't**) ready for the test last week.
- Who (**were** - are - **s** - **was**) your favorite teacher last year?
- (Are - **was** - **is** - Does) Huda sad yesterday when she lost the race?





### 1 Fill in the blank with the correct word or phrase.

1. .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024  
 a) Clay                      b) Metal                      c) Wood                      d) Paper
2. A/An .... is someone who studies very old objects. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة المعاصر من رمضان التعليمية 2024  
 a) engineer                      b) teacher                      c) archaeologist                      d) farmer
3. .... are works of art that are usually made of stone or wood.  
 a) Farming tools                      b) Archaeologists                      c) Sculptures                      d) Culture
4. Something that people do not understand or cannot explain is a/an ....  
 a) culture                      b) sculpture                      c) mystery                      d) ancient
5. A period of time of 100 years is a/an .....  
 a) century                      b) ability                      c) position                      d) information
6. Tools are ..... we use to make or do things.  
 a) humans                      b) animals                      c) objects                      d) birds

### 2 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentence.

محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

tools – information – humans – complicated – Archaeologists

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area. ....(1).... went there to study them. The sculptures all had large eyes and ....(2).... hair styles. The people made clay sculptures and other farming ....(3).... from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of ....(4)....

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to form a sentence.

went – the – last – They – to – zoo – weekend. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة انشابات التعليمية 2024

visited – the – I – Museum – week – Egyptian – last. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة التعليمية 2024

stone – farming – There – tools – iron – were – and.

was – The – quality – work – of – the – incredible.





Put the correct form of the words between brackets:

- 1 She ..... (travel) to Luxor last month. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق التعليمية 2024
- 2 We didn't ..... (went) to school yesterday. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
- 3 My family ..... (go) on a vacation last year. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الزرقا التعليمية 2024
- 4 Where ..... (does) he yesterday?
- 5 He ..... (not have) any homework last week.
- 6 ..... (Did) you at school this morning?
- 7 He ..... (didn't) at the club yesterday. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
- 8 They ..... (not be) at home when I called.
- 9 She ..... (be) happy to see her friends last week.
- 10 They ..... (built) a new house last year. محافظة البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود التعليمية 2024



5 Punctuate the following:

1 The nok people's tools were made of stone

.....

2 did he go on a vacation last summer

.....



6 Write the words using the following guide, of elements:

### "Nok Civilization"

local people – West Africa – iron and stone farming tools

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Marco Polo Crosses The Desert ماركو بولو يعبر الصحراء



1. Listen and say:

السمع وفل



#### Main vocabulary

fascinated (adj.)	منبهور	dromedary	الجمال العربي	caravan	قافلة
wasteland	أرض قاحلة (خالية)	legends	أساطير	adventure	مغامرة

#### Extra vocabulary

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي	sand dunes	كتبان رملية	step	خطوة
shapes	أشكال	waves	أمواج	language	لغة
ocean	محيط	toward	نحو	Lop Nur	قرية لوب نور
empty (adj.)	فارغ	mysterious (adj.)	غامض	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
silently	بصمت	strange (adj.)	غريب	noises	ضوضاء
voices	أصوات (بشرية)	drums	طبول	travelers	مسافرون / رحالة
enough (adj.)	كافي	frightening (adj.)	مخيف	Noah Oasis	واحة نوح
exhausted (adj.)	مُتعب	direction	اتجاه	landscape	أرض (مكان)

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
change	يتغير changed	move	يتحرك moved
sway	يتمايل swayed	roll	يلتف rolled
last	يدوم / يستمر lasted	wander	يتجول wandered

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
know	يعرف knew	say	يقول said
leave	يغادر left	lose	يفقد / يضيع lost

## Expressions and Phrases

look like	يشبه	for the first time	لأول مرة
in fact	في الواقع	slowly up and down	ببطء لأعلى ولأسفل
over the ocean	عبر المحيط	there was nothing	لم يكن هناك شيء
by day,	أثناء النهار	boiling hot	شديد السخونة
by night,	أثناء الليل	freezing cold	شديد البرودة
go on	يستمر	far away	بعيدًا
lost long ago	مفقود منذ فترة طويلة	make sure	يتأكد
on the horizon	في الأفق	(be) over	انتهى
interested in	مهتم بـ	from side to side	من جانب لآخر

## Definitions

fascinated by	very interested in	مهتم جدًا بشيء
caravan	a group of camels and people traveling together	مجموعة من الابل والجبال يسافرون معًا
swaying	moving from side to side	يتحرك من جانب إلى آخر
wasteland	a landscape where nothing lives	أرض (مكان) لا يعيش فيه شيء
wandered	walked about without a direction	يمشي بلا اتجاه
legend	a very old and famous story	قصة قديمة جدًا ومشهورة

## Take care!

- The writer uses "adjectives and adverbs" to help the reader imagine what's happening in their mind and help the reader understand how the characters feel.

نستخدم الـ **adjectives** و **adverbs** لمساعد القارئ ان يتخيل ما يدور في ذهنه ويحس ما يشعرون به الشخصيات

- e.g. - He was **fascinated** by the sand dunes.  
 - They went on **silently**, but often the wind made **strange** noises.



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.



كان ماركو بولو في الواحد و عشرين من عمره في عام ١٢٧٥ عندما دخل في صحراء جوبي لأول مرة. كان مقبوضا بكنعان البرملية التي تحركت مع كل خطوة بخطوها الجمال. كانت بعض الكتلان الرملية تسن ميلا طويلا و ٢٠ ميلا عرضا، وكانت اشكالها تتغير دائما الرياح جعلهم يحركون ويلفون مثل الأمواج للصحراء الصحمة. في الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء جوبي في لغتهم.

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

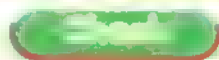
تحركت الجمال لغربته في القافيه بطء أعلى وأسفل الكتلان الرملية، مماثلة مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط، ذهبوا نحو (نور). لغربه لأخيره قبل الوصول إلى الأراضي الأخيرة في الصحراء. عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان، لم يكن هناك شيء، لا لاف، لا نباتات ولا ماء.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still ...

كان مكانا غامضا وخطيرا. في النهار، كان شديد السخونة، في ليل، كان شديد البرودة. في بعض الاحيان كان هناك ثلج. استمرت انفاقه بصمت، ولكن في كثير من الاحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتا غريبة، مثل اصوات نغمي وطبول تعرف من بعيد. كانت هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن الرحلة الذين فقدوا صد هرة طونه في الصحراء ما رأوا يحولون هناك ...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

قبل ان يغادروا (نور بول)، أكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفي من الطعام وامااء للرجال والحيوانات ليدوم لمدة شهر واحد. بعد ثلاثين يوما بالصمت من السفر عبر هذه الارض الفارغة والمخيفة، رأوا أخيرا الخط الاحمر بواحة نوح في الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام وكانت الحيوانات متعبة، ولكن تلك معامرة الصحراء قد انتهت. لقد كانوا في الصين!



### Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Marco Polo was (lost – bored – fascinated – worried) by the Gobi Desert.
- 2 The wind made the (caravans – sand dunes – shaps – dromedaries) roll like waves.
- 3 Local people called the Gobi Desert "the (big – dry – small – wet) sea" in their language.





## Story



### 3. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

#### Main vocabulary

mysterious (adj.)	غامض	ship	سفينة	port	ميناء
possible (adj.)	ممکن	cabin	كابينة / مقصورة	news	أخبار

#### Extra vocabulary

island	جزيرة	boring (adj.)	ممل	terrible (adj.)	فظيع
weather	طقس	telescope	تليسكوب / منظار	beaches	شواطئ
sandy (adj.)	مليء بالرمال	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	mountains	جبال
center	مركز	candle	شمعة	hope	أمل
light	ضوء	clearer (adj.)	أكثر صفاء	quite	إلى حد ما
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	the others	الآخرون	captain	قائد السفينة

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
imagine يتخيل	imagined	seem يبدو	seemed
move يتحرك	moved	explore يستكشف	explored

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
leave يغادر	left	see يرى	saw
go يذهب	went	read يقرأ	read

#### Expressions and Phrases

long walks	المشي لمسافات طويلة	pass the time	يقضي الوقت
during the day	خلال النهار	come up	تشرق
have nothing to do	ليس لدى شيء لأفعله	by the light of	في ضوء
a bit clearer	أكثر وضوحًا قليلًا	in my heart	بداخلي

#### Take care!

لاحظ الفرق بين (quiet) بمعنى (هادئ) و (quite) بمعنى (إلى حد ما).

e.g. My teacher asked me to be **quiet**.

It's **quite** hot outside.

لاحظ أن (sleep) قد تأتي فعل بمعنى (نامت) أو اسم بمعنى (نوم).

e.g. I had quite a relaxing **sleep** in my cabin last night.

She usually **sleeps** for 8 hours every day.

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** مع الأيام.

e.g. The writer feels excited **on** Day 3.

## The Mysterious Island الجزيرة الغامضة

## Listening script page 82 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



4. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

## The beginning

January 17

Today was a long, boring, day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible. I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.



يوم طويل مممل مع طقس رهيب. السفينة لم تترك الميناء، لذلك لم أستطع الذهاب إلى الجزيرة الغامضة. يمكنني رؤية الجزيرة من خلال تلسكوب. الشواطئ بيضاء ورمليّة مع الكثير من أشجار النخيل وهناك جبال خضراء في وسطها. من المثير أن أتخيل ما يمكن أن أجده هناك. أنا متأكد من أنني سأسافر هناك قريباً.

## The middle

January 19

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey perhaps – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

كنت حزينا طوال اليوم أمس. الطقس لا يزال سيئاً وهناك رياح قوية. ذهبت لسفريات طويلة حول السفينة لتضييع الوقت خلال النهار. في المساء، لم يكن لدي شيء أفعله سوى قراءة كتابي بضوء شمعة في كبينة صغيرة. اليوم السماء أصبحت أكثر وضوحاً – هناك بعض الأمل لرحلتي ربما – ولكن يبدو أن الوقت يتحرك ببطء شديد في هذا المكان.

## The end

January 21

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

لقد حصلت على نوم مريح في كبينة ليلاً، و هذا الصباح تناولت الإفطار مع الآخرين على السفينة. في المساء، كانت هناك أخبار جيدة من القبطان، حيث يقول إن الطقس عذاً سيكون جيّداً بدون رياح، لذلك يمكننا الذهاب إلى الجزيرة في الصباح. ستعادر السفينة عندما تشرق الشمس. أنا متحمس للغاية: فسرعان ما يمكنني استكشاف الجزيرة الغامضة!



# Pronunciation

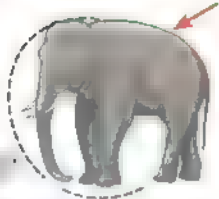


5 Listen, point, and say

اسمع، اشر وقم.



/dʒ/



huge



fridge



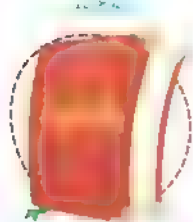
age



joke



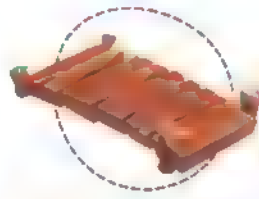
dangerous



language



cage



bridge



village



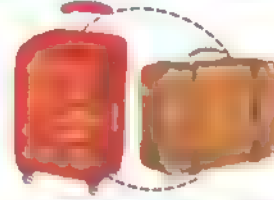
damaged



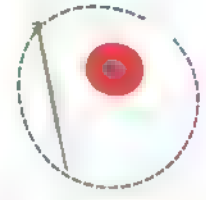
Jerry



arrange (v.)



luggage



Japan

/z/



measure (v.)

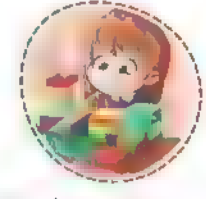
تقاسم



treasure



usually



leisure

وقت فراغ



Asia

آسيا



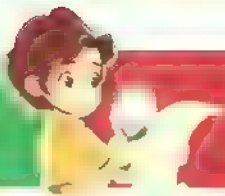
television

تلفزيون



pleasure

متعة



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 I read a nice story .....  
 a) last week      b) yesterday      c) an hour ago      d) last month
- 2 It was a page from a diary in the ..... century.  
 a) 16<sup>th</sup>      b) 17<sup>th</sup>      c) 18<sup>th</sup>      d) 19<sup>th</sup>
- 3 The writer was traveling on a .....  
 a) train      b) plane      c) car      d) ship
- 4 He had a relaxing sleep in his .....  
 a) cabin      b) bedroom      c) house      d) bed

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The ..... is a group of camels and people traveling together.  
 a) wasteland      b) legend      c) sculpture      d) caravan
- 2 My dad worked for 12 hours yesterday, so he was .....  
 a) exhausted      b) scared      c) frightened      d) excited
- 3 A/An ..... is a landscape where nothing lives.  
 a) caravan      b) oasis      c) wonderland      d) wasteland
- 4 When someone ....., they walk about without a direction.  
 a) runs      b) wanders      c) climbs      d) jumps
- 5 ..... are very old famous stories.  
 a) Cultures      b) Civilizations      c) Caravans      d) Legends
- 6 ..... are camels that can carry people across the desert.  
 a) Cabins      b) Captains      c) Dromedaries      d) Ships

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sea – animals – dunes – Desert – water

Marco Polo went into the Gobi ..... (1) ..... . He was fascinated by the sand ..... (2) ....., which moved with each step the camels made. Marco made sure they had enough food and ..... (3) ..... for the men and the ..... (4) ..... to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally were in China.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which, moved with each step the dromedaries made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the sand dunes.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Marco Polo was ..... when he went to the Gobi Desert.  
a) 12                      b) 21                      c) 31                      d) 50
- Local people called the Gobi Desert ".....".  
a) the big tree                      b) the wet ocean  
c) the dry sea                      d) the dark place
- The underlined word "dromedaries" is a type of .....  
a) caravans                      b) people                      c) camels                      d) sand dunes

#### Answer the following questions:

- What was Marco Polo fascinated by?  
.....
- Summarize the text in two sentences.  
.....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- dunes – sand – Some – were – sixty – tall – meters.  
.....
- moved – slowly – The dromedaries – in the – caravan.  
.....
- leave – The ship – port – yesterday – the – didn't.  
.....
- read – cabin – I – a book – in – my.  
.....

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

- she was sad all day yesterday  
.....
- China is a country in asia  
.....



### 1. Listen and say:

استمع واكتب



#### Main vocabulary

experience	تجربة	felucca	قارب شراعى (فلوكة)	River Nile	نهر النيل
skills	مهارات	sails	أشرعة	magical (adj.)	سحري

#### Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj.)	مدهش	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	sailing boat	قارب شراعى
trip	رحلة قصيرة	warm (adj.)	دافئ	sunshine	شعاع الشمس
gently	برفق	quiet (adj.)	هادئ	peaceful (adj.)	مسالم / آمن
incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق	awesome (adj.)	رائع	oud	آلة العود
beautifully	بطريقة جميلة	enjoyable (adj.)	ممتع	cloth	قماش

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sail	sailed	push	pushed

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
deal	dealt	make	made

#### Expressions and Phrases

have an experience	يمر بتجربة	go on a felucca	يذهب على متن فلوكة
made of wood	مصنوع من الخشب	difficult to sail	من الصعب الإبحار به
go slowly down the river	يتحرك ببطء في النهر	along the way	على طول الطريق
for the first time	لأول مرة	on board	على سطح القارب
play traditional music	يعزف الموسيقى الشعبية	What a day!	يا له من يوم!

#### Definitions

skills	the ability to deal with something well	القدرة على التعامل جيدًا مع شيء
sails	large pieces of cloth on a boat that make the wind push the boat	قطع كبيرة من القماش تجعل الرياح تدفع القارب
magical	very enjoyable and exciting	ممتع جدًا ومثير للاهتمام



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience ...  
I went on a felucca on the River Nile!  
A felucca is a traditional Egyptian  
sailing boat. It's made of wood.

أنا سعيد جداً  
في يوم من الأيام  
في نهر النيل  
في قارب شراطي صليبي



A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

كان هناك رجل طويل يدعى كريم. من الصعب إبحار الفلوكا، لكن كريم كان قوياً جداً ولديه المهارات اللازمة. الرحلة كانت رائعة. ذهبنا ببطء في النهر في أشعة الشمس الدافئة. كان القارب به شراعين بيضيين يتحركان برفق في الريح. كان الجو هادئاً وطمأنينياً - طريقة رائعة للسفر.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء الرائعة على طول الطريق. رأيت الهرمات الثلاثة لأول مرة في حياتي. كانت رائعة جداً. كانت الفلوكا كبيرة جداً والحجارة كانت لونها ذهبي. الهرم الأكبر، أطول الهرمات الثلاثة، يبلغ ارتفاعه 147 متر. كانت رائعة جداً.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

في المساء، تناولنا طعاماً لذيذاً على متن القارب. كان هناك رجل يعزف الموسيقى المصرية التقليدية على العود. عزف بشكل جميل. كانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة. كان ذلك من أجمل أيامي. لقد مررت بوقت رائع جداً.

## Take care!

"Adjectives and adverbs help us to understand the feelings of the writer."

صفات والأفعال تساعدنا على فهم مشاعر الكاتب.

## Adjective

An adjective describes a noun.

الصفة تصف الاسم.

eg I had an amazing ...

## Adverb

An adverb describes a verb.

الحال يصف الفعل.

eg We slowly down the river.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

### How to write a diary (المذكرات) كيفية كتابة مذكرة

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.

المذكرة لها خصائص مختلفة عن أنواع النصوص الأخرى.



It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

عادة ما تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة، كل فقرة حول ما حدث في يوم منفرد.



It is usually written in an informal style and uses first-person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.)

عادة ما تكتب بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا - نحن - لدى).



It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

عادة ما نصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآراءه.



It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

عادة ما نصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

e.g.

Write a diary of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

#### "My visit to Alexandria"

How and when did you go there? – How did you feel about it?

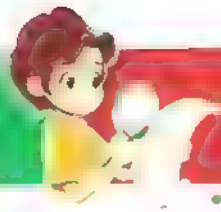
.....

.....

.....

.....





### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A/An ..... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. .....  
 a) bus                      b) car                      c) train                      d) felucca
- 2 The trip was ..... It was such an enjoyable and exciting trip.  
 a) magical                      b) boring                      c) tired                      d) difficult
- 3 ..... are large pieces of cloth that make boats move.  
 a) Dromedaries                      b) Skills                      c) Sails                      d) Caravans
- 4 Captain Kareem had the ..... to sail the felucca.  
 a) sails                      b) skills                      c) boat                      d) wood
- 5 The white sails moved slowly in the .....  
 a) wind                      b) road                      c) way                      d) desert
- 6 The Pyramids have very ..... stones. .....  
 a) large                      b) soft                      c) small                      d) weak
- 7 He is a great musician. He plays the ..... beautifully.  
 a) boat                      b) felucca                      c) oud                      d) sail
- 8 We had a delicious lunch on ..... the felucca.  
 a) top                      b) sail                      c) board                      d) oud

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

experience – wood – River – captain – sail

Ali had an amazing experience yesterday. He went on a felucca on the ..... (1) ..... Nile with his friend Tamer. A felucca is an Egyptian sailing boat which is made of ..... (2) ..... They got on the felucca with a captain called Saber. Saber had the skills to ..... (3) ..... the felucca. They went slowly down the river and enjoyed the view. It was a lovely ..... (4) ..... for them.

خاتمة لقصة - إدارة هليو بلوس التعليمية 2024

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Ali was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Ali was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat has two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

The general idea of the text is about .....

- Answer the following questions:**

- 5 How was the trip?**

It is made of The felucca wood.

- 2 is – famous – Egypt – its – Pyramids – for.

- 3 is - The Great - high - Pyramid - 147 - meters.

- had - We - a delicious - on board - lunch - the felucca.

I had such a wonderful experience in egypt

- 2 did you go on a felucca yesterday

جواب عن  
صفحة  
310

## “My trip to Al-Fayoum”

“an amazing experience – fascinated by – a delicious lunch”



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

go on a voyage

يذهب في رحلة بحرية

ride a camel

يركب جمل

sail by ship

يسبح بالسفينة

explorer

مستكشف

vacation

إجازة

experiences

تجارب

travels

سفرات

Italian

إيطالي

ancient

قديم

go on a journey

يذهب في رحلة طويلة

travel by train

يسافر بالقطار

take a trip

يقوم برحلة قصيرة

diary

مفكرة (مذكرات)

museum

متحف

century

قرن

the West

الغرب

objects

أغراض

interesting

مثير للاهتمام

## Lesson (2)

discovery

اكتشاف

complicated

معقد

clay

طين

surprising

مفاجئ

sculptures

منحوتات

farming tools

أدوات زراعية

quality

جودة

iron

حديد

mystery

لعر

archaeologists

علماء الآثار

West Africa

غرب إفريقيا

tools

أدوات

unusual

غير عادي

Nigeria

نيجيريا

stone

حجر

style

طراز

civilization

حضارة

Ife people

شعب «الإيف»

## Lesson (3)

fascinated

مبهور

caravan

قافلة

legends

أساطير

adventure

مغامرة

Gobi Desert

صحراء جوبي

voices

أصوات

language

لغة

waves

أمواج

direction

اتجاه

dromedary

انجمل العربي

ocean

محيط

wasteland

أرض قاحلة

step

خطوة

mysterious

غامض

noises

ضوضاء

captain

قائد

exhausted

مرهق

frightening

مخيف

## Lessons (4 &amp; 5)

felucca

قارب شراعى

sails

أشرعة

sailing boat

قارب شراعى

sunshine

شعاع الشمس

warm

دافئ

incredible

لا يصدق

beautifully

بطريقة جميلة

skills

مهارات

traditional

تقليدى

gently

برفق

peaceful

مسالم

oud

آلة العود

awesome

رائع

quiet

هادئ

## Language Focus

## The Past Simple Tense

... التصريف لثنى مفعول + ( ) Subject

Subject + didn't + (inf.) ...

Mona went to school on foot last week.

We didn't have a vacation two years ago.

A Did + subject + (inf.) ... ?

B Yes,

B No,

subject

did,

didn't.

A Wh- word | did | subject | (inf.) ... ?

B subject ( ) + التصريف لثنى المفعول

eg A Did Dalida find her book?

B: Yes, she did.

eg A Where did you find your pencil case?

B: I found it in my bag.



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إحانة اختبار الوحدة.

### Lesson 1

.....	يركب جملاً	.....	إحارة
.....	يسبح بالسفينة	.....	يقوم برحلة قصيرة
.....	يسافر بالقطار	.....	قديم
.....	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	.....	يذهب في رحلة طويلة
.....	مفكرة (مذكرات)	.....	مستكشف

### Lesson 2

.....	طين	.....	مفاجئ
.....	أدوات	.....	اكتشاف
.....	علماء الآثار	.....	منحوتات
.....	ثقافة	.....	حصارة
.....	جودة	.....	لعز

### Lesson 3

.....	ضخم	.....	الجمال العربي
.....	منبهر	.....	قافلة
.....	يتمايل	.....	نكتة
.....	أرض قاحلة	.....	قرية
.....	يلتف	.....	خطير
.....	أمتعة	.....	محطم
.....	كثبان رملية	.....	كنز
.....	يرتب	.....	عادة
.....	وقت فراغ	.....	متعة

### Lessons 4 & 5

.....	قارب شراعى	.....	مهارات
.....	أشعة	.....	تقليدى
.....	ممتع	.....	شعاع الشمس
.....	مسالم	.....	سحري
.....	آلة العود	.....	تجربة





• لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write about a famous traveler:

- (اسم الرحالة) was a famous traveler.
- He was born in (مكان ميلاده) in (مكان ميلاده).
- (مسيرته) is (مسيرته).
- His most famous journey was to (مكان).
- When he reached (المكان), he (نشاط قام به).
- He wrote his famous diary that (محتوى المذكرة).

## Marco Polo

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice. Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China. When he reached China, he recorded much information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diary that described his journey.

## How to write about experiences in the past:

- I went to + (مكان) with my family/friends.
- We went by + (وسيلة مواصلات).
- We stayed there for a + (مدة زمنية).
- We enjoyed + (نشاط قممت به).
- We visited + (معالم سياحية).
- My favorite thing was + نشاط قممت به because (السبب).

## My trip to Aswan

I went to Aswan with my family last year. We went there by train. We stayed there for a week. We enjoyed riding camels and boat sailing. We visited the Elephantine Island and Nubian villages. My favorite thing was boat trips because sailing is my favorite sport.

## How to write a travel diary:

تاريخ اليوم الذي تتكلم عما حدث فيه

- I went on a trip to + مكان.
- We spent time + نشاط قممت به.
- We stopped to see + معالم سياحية.
- It was / They were + صفات المعالم السياحية.
- At night, we + نشاط قممت به.
- It was + وصف الرحلة.

## "My trip to Luxor"

24 June

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a boat trip to Luxor. We spent time sailing on the Nile under the golden sunshine. We stopped to see the Temples of Abydos. They were tall, ancient, and fascinating. At night, we had dinner at a traditional restaurant. It was quiet and peaceful. The trip was amazing.

## 1 Match the words to their meanings:

A

1 clay

2 tools

3 sculptures

4 archaeologist

5 mystery

B

a. ( ) objects we use to make or do things

b. ( ) art made from stone or wood

c. ( ) a type of earth that is sticky when wet

d. ( ) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground

e. ( ) something that people do not understand or cannot explain

## 2 Circle the correct answer:

1 Hani didn't (go / went) on the palace tour with the guide.

2 A Did your mom (made / make) your dress, Laila? B Yes, she (da / didn't).

3 We didn't (have / had) a good meal in that restaurant.

4 The water in the sea (weren't / wasn't) warm.

5 A Where did you (find / found) your books? B They (was / were) in my bag.

## 3 Complete the dialog with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets:

Sameh : How (1)..... your trip, Kareem? (be)

Kareem : It (2)..... really good, thanks. (be) We (3)..... to the Western Desert. (go)

Sameh : Wow! (4)..... you ..... with your parents? (go)

Kareem : No, I (5)..... with my uncle. (be) We (6)..... some very nice places. (find)

Sameh : (7)..... there any other children on the trip? (be)

Kareem : No, there (8)..... (be) But I (9)..... fun! (have)



### Listening



#### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Yesterday, I went on a ..... trip.  
a) camel                      b) bus                      c) train                      d) felucca
- 2 A felucca is a traditional sailing .....  
a) boat                      b) ship                      c) instrument                      d) sail
- 3 A tall man called ..... was the captain of the boat.  
a) Adel                      b) Ali                      c) Kareem                      d) Omar
- 4 He had the ..... to sail the felucca.  
a) time                      b) money                      c) job                      d) skills

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



### Reading

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 My uncle went on a long ..... by sea.  
a) trip                      b) ride                      c) train                      d) voyage
- 2 A team of ..... found many sculptures in the area of the Pyramids.  
a) doctors                      b) actors                      c) nurses                      d) archaeologists
- 3 Marco Polo was an Italian .....  
a) baker                      b) explorer                      c) teacher                      d) farmer
- 4 We travel in the desert by .....  
a) ship                      b) boat                      c) camel                      d) train

محافظة الدقهية - إدارة القاعات التعليمية 2024

محافظة الدقهية - إدارة القاعات التعليمية 2024

محافظة الدقهية - إدارة القاعات التعليمية 2024

محافظة الدقهية - إدارة القاعات التعليمية 2024

#### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

wind – captain – skills – cabin – explore

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my .....(1)..... last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the .....(2).....: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no .....(3)....., so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited. Soon, I can .....(4)..... the mysterious island!

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Susan and her family went on a vacation to Croatia a few years ago. They visited the Marco Polo Museum. It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. They took a trip there. It is a really interesting museum. It's all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences, it is called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It was a very difficult journey. It took years.



محافظة الدقهية - إدارة القاعات التعليمية 2024

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Susan's family .....  
a) museum                      b) vacation                      c) palace                      d) house
- 2 Susan and her family went on a vacation to .....  
a) Egypt                      b) China                      c) France                      d) Croatia
- 3 The Marco Polo Museum is on .....  
a) a town                      b) a lake                      c) an island                      d) a city

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 Who was Marco Polo? .....
- 5 When did Marco Polo visit China? .....



### Writing

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 a – go – you – Where – did – on – vacation?

محافظة البحيرة - إدارة إيتي البارود التعليمية 2024

- 2 had – The – hair – complicated – sculptures – styles.

- 3 didn't – want – She – to go – a journey – on.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 My family ..... (go) on a vacation last year.

- 2 She ..... (don't) cook fish yesterday.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الماسر في وعصا التعليمية 2024

**7 Punctuate the following:**

1

where is Lop Nur

**8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

مخاب عنه  
صفحة  
312

5

**"Marco Polo"**

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرح العفيفيه 2024

famous traveler – China



Assess your  
progress

★★★★★

< 50%

"Study again"

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

Self-improvement

85 : 100%

Well done!



241





تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

### 1 Read and complete the dialogue:

amazing – felucca – favorite – reading – diary

Rana: What are you ....., Ingy?

Ingy: It's my travel ..... I want to remember my trip to Luxor.

Rana: What was your ..... thing about the vacation?

Ingy: I think it was the ..... trip.

Rana: Really, it sounds .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Nadia rode a (snip – boat – came) in the desert last week.
- 2 The sculptures of the Nok were made from (wood – iron – clay).
- 3 Adel had an amazing (experience – civilization – culture) on the felucca trip.
- 4 Vasco da Gama was a famous (teacher – archaeologist – explorer) from the past.
- 5 I like to read my travel (bag – diary – game) to remember my travels.
- 6 My parents (travels – traveled – travel) to Italy on their last vacation.
- 7 Where (was – were – do – did) they go this morning?
- 8 My friends (don't – didn't – doesn't) meet me for dinner yesterday evening.
- 9 Yesterday (is – are – was) rainy and cloudy.
- 10 The kids (are – was – were) on board two hours ago.

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 didn't – Omar – last – visit – France – year.

2 at the – Mona – a week – ago – was – party.

3 were – your – Where – parents – yesterday?

4 moved – slowly – The dromedaries – desert – in – the.

5 Did – visit – Museum – you – the Marco – Polo?



## Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of him/herself.

talk about quantities.

find the meaning of words in a text.

learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

research and create a poster about different spices.

## Did you know?

When you brush your hair, it *\*spreads* the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it look *\*shiny* and healthy.

## Find out!

The most popular personal care routines people do every day are having fresh morning showers and using skin *\*cleansers*.

*\*spread*

ينشر | *\*shiny*

لامع | *\*cleansers*

مستحضرات



1. Listen, point, and say:

اسمع، أشر، وقل:



### Main vocabulary



### Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	perfume oil	زيت عطري	instructions	تعليمات
palm wax	شمع النخيل	little (adj.)	قليل / صغير	glass	كوب زجاجي
cotton rope	حبل قطني	step	خطوة	quantities	كميات
package	عبوة	soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
ingredients	مكونات	bowl	وعاء	cooker	بوتاجاز
wooden spoon	ملعقة خشبية	hard (ad.)	صلب	soap container	حاوية صابون

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed		squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed		heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted		stir	يقلب	stirred

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
make	يصنع	made		say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took		hold	يمسك	held

## Expressions and Phrases

have something in mind	تفكر في شيء ما	read (something) out	يقرأ بصوت عالي
Here it is.	ها هي!	that's enough	هذا كافي
smell lovely	رائحته جميلة	hold ... up	يمسك / يسند
let's see	دعنا نرى	take (something) ... off the cooker	يرفع (شيئاً ما) من على الموقد

Important sentences جمل هامة

- \* Here are some instructions to make candles. ها هي بعض التعليمات لصنع الشمع.
- \* Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. استخدم حوالي ٤٥٠ جراماً من الشمع لعمل ٣ شمعات.
- \* Squeeze in about 40 drops of perfume oil. قم بعصر حوالي ٤٠ قطرة من الزيت العطري.
- \* Press about 15 flowers on the tops of the candles. اضغط حوالي ١٥ زهرة على الأجزاء العلوية من الشموع.
- \* You need a wick, a glass, and a popsicle for each candle. تحتاج إلى فتيل وكوب وعصا خشبية لكل شمعة.

## Tip!

When we listen for **quantities**, remember to listen/ look for numbers and words about measurements.

For example: kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

تذكرها نسمع من كميات. تذكر ان نسمع بحث عن ارقام وكلمات بحساب. مثل: كينوجرامات، جرامات، لتر، مليلتر، ملاعق، علب، عبوات.

نستخدم الفعل في المصدر (inf.) لإعطاء التعليمات.

e.g. **Heat** the wax to melt it, and **stir** well.

## Choose the correct answer:

- I need to buy the (candles – soaps – ingredients – steps) for our meal today.
- Squeeze in about 40 (wicks – drops – grasses – cookers) of perfume oil on the wax.
- The (sand – perfume oil – salt – water) smells lovely.
- (Stir – Put – Heat – Press) the wax to melt it.
- Read the (ingredients – instructions – petals – containers) before using the new mobile.

## Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ ( ) في كلمة (palm) لا ينطق "silent".





## 2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وبداًل الأءوار:



Mom

Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

مرحباً ليلي، أنا أحب صنع الأشياء. لماذا لا نصنع شيئاً جديداً؟

Laila



That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

أفها فكرة رافعه. هل لديك شيء في ذهني؟



Mom

I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

لدي بعض الزيت العطري. يمكننا اسءءءه لءصء الشموع.

Laila



Candles? Wow! I love it!

الشموع؟ واو! أنا أحبها!



Mom

Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?

هه هي الءءلءاء هل يمكنك ان تءرءها لي بصوب عال؟

Laila



Right. First, we need some wax.

ءسناً. في الءابءه. نءاء إلى بعض من الشمع



M

Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

هه هو. هء شمع النءس لءسءلءص من اشءار الءل الءصريه إءه ءف يصء شموع ءصنة ء الكفة. لي نءاءي

Laila



It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

الءءلءاء تءول: «اسءءءه 450 ءراماً من الشمع لءءور لءءل ثلاث شمءاء»



Mom

Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

ءسناً. نوءء ءوانى 500 ءرم هه. هء. نءفى ماءا بءء

Laila



We need some perfume oil.

نءاء إلى بعض الزيت العطري



Mom

Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm ... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

هه هي، هذه زجاجات صغيره من زيت الليمون . اعمم ... إن رائحتها جميله. ما نكمسه الى يحتاج إليها ؟

Laila



The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

التعليمات تقول: "قم بضغط حوالي 40 قطره من الزيت"



Mom

Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

حسنا ونمكننا ان نأخذ حوالي 15 زهره ونضعها على الأجرء العتيقه من الشموع

Laila



Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick – that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

نعم، إنها فكره جيده. سوف يحتاج نكوب واحد وقيل واحد لكل شمعته إنه ذلك الحبل انطى الصغير بداخل الشمعه



Mom

Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

وه، نعم ونحتاج لبعض عصي المصاصه لسب القيل يد حل الأكواد

Laila



So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

إذا سحاح ثلاثه أكواب وثلاث فائل وثلاث عصي مصاصه، أدلك صحيح؟ إذن، ما الذي يحتاج إلى فعله أولاً؟



Mom

Let's see ... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

ننسى نرى "الخطوة الأولى: قم بتسخين الشمع لإذائنه، ثم قلبه جيداً"

### The instructions for making soap:

تعليمات صنع الصابون:

1 Put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl.

2 Heat the ingredients on a cooker.

سخن المكونات على النواجار.

3 Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon.

4 Take the ingredients off the cooker.

ارفع المكونات عن النواجار.

5 When the ingredients are hard and cool, add them into a soap container.

عندما تصبح المكونات صلبه ونزده، قم بأضافتها في حاويه الصابون.

6 You can press flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.

يمكنك ان تقوم بضغط سلال الزهور لجعل شكل الصابون ورائحته جميله



Listen to the audio and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.



(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Mom and Laila are making some .....  
 a) food                      b) soap                      c) candles                      d) perfume  
 First, they need about 450 grams of ..... to make three candles.  
 a) oil                      b) salt                      c) flour                      d) wax
- 3 They need ..... drops of perfume oil.  
 a) 10                      b) 20                      c) 30                      d) 40
- 4 They need three ..... and three glasses.  
 a) figs                      b) wicks                      c) dates                      d) bags



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Put little sugar in the tea and .....  
 a) cut                      b) stir                      c) drop                      d) throw
- 2 The ..... smells lovely. You can add a few drops.  
 a) wax                      b) perfume oil                      c) candle                      d) wick
- 3 The wick is a cotton ..... inside the candle.  
 a) oil                      b) stick                      c) rope                      d) wax
- 4 Heat the wax until it ..... and stir it well.  
 a) squeezes                      b) melts                      c) presses                      d) holds
- 5 We use ..... to have light when it's dark.  
 a) candles                      b) candies                      c) food                      d) soap
- 6 You must ..... the button to make the machine work.  
 a) stir                      b) melt                      c) heat                      d) press
- 7 Nadia put some ..... to hold the wicks inside the glasses.  
 a) wax                      b) perfume oil                      c) popsicle sticks                      d) bottles
- 8 We need some ..... to make candles.  
 a) flour                      b) wood                      c) juice                      d) wax

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة لروية الحمراء التعليمية 2024

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان لتعليمية 2024



Match the words in the box with the correct picture.

petals – heat – stirred – ingredients – container

Mom loves making new things. She wanted to make soap yesterday. First, she put the .....(1)..... in a bowl and heated them on the cooker. She .....(2)..... the ingredients with a wooden spoon. When the ingredients are hard and cool, Mom added them into a soap .....(3)..... She also pressed some flower .....(4)..... to make the soap look and smell lovely.

## Read the text and answer the questions:

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use palm wax that comes from Egyptian palm trees. Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil. You can use flower petals and press them on the top of the candles. First, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Put the wax in the glasses. Then, put the wicks inside the glasses. Use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) making candles                      b) Egyptian palm trees  
 c) flower petals                      d) palm wax
- 2 The underlined word "wicks" means .....  
 a) wooden sticks    b) small bottles    c) cotton ropes    d) perfume oil
- 3 We use ..... to hold the wicks.  
 a) glasses              b) popsicle sticks    c) palm trees              d) candles

### Answer the following questions:

- 4 Where does palm wax come from? .....
- 5 How many grams of wax do we need to make three candles? .....

## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 the – to – wax – Heat – it – melt.  
 .....
- 2 out – Can – the – please – you – instructions, – read?  
 .....
- 3 little – bottles – I – have – oil – of – lemon.  
 .....
- 4 one – You – need – for each – wick – candle.  
 .....

## Punctuate the following:

- 1 how much wax do we need  
 .....
- 2 first, we need some wax  
 .....





## Ancient Egyptians Ate Well! أكل المصريون القدماء جيدًا!!



### 1. Listen and say:

اسمع ومل:



#### Main vocabulary

paintings	رسومات	barley	شعير	wheat	قمح
festivals	احتفالات	spices	توابل	herbs	أعشاب

#### Extra vocabulary

cooking	الطبخ	well	بطريقة جيدة	flood	فيضان
garlic	ثوم	lentils	عدس	beans	الفول
probably	من المحتمل	geese	إوز	honey	عسل
dates	تمر	figs	تين	sweet (adj.)	حلو المذاق
jar	إثاء (برطمان)	occasion	مناسبة	taste	طعم / مذاق
traffic	حركة المرور	fridge	ثلاجة	vanilla essence	مستخلص الفانيلا

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
preserve	يحفظ / preserved	dry	يجفف / dried

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
drink	يشرب / drank	come	يأتي / came

#### Expressions and Phrases

depend on	يعتمد على	taste better	مذاقه أفضل
take care of	يعتنى بـ	last for longer	يدوم لمدة أطول

#### Definitions

barley	a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things نبات يمكننا استخدام بذوره في صنع الخبز وأشياء أخرى
herbs	plants with a strong taste often used in cooking نباتات لها مذاق قوي عادة تستخدم في الطهي
festival	a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food مناسبة خاصة عندما يعزف الناس الموسيقى ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا
preserve	add something to food to make it last for longer إضافة شيء ما للطعام لجعله يدوم لمدة أطول



## 2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey!

People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.



What did paintings from Ancient Egyptians show?

What did Ancient Egyptians grow?



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (h) في كلمة (herbs) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.



## Language Focus

### 1. Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

#### Countable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- يسبق المفرد منها أداة النكرة "a" إذا بدأ بصوت ساكن و"an" إذا بدأ بصوت متحرك.
- الحروف المتحركة (a - e - i - o - u)

#### Uncountable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

a mango

المانجو

mangoes

sugar

سكر

water

مياه

a store

محل

stores

oil

زيت

juice

عصير

an apple

تفاحة

apples

traffic

مرور

money

نقود

### 2. Some/ Any

We use **some** and **any** to talk about quantities (countable/uncountable):

نستخدم some و any لنعلم عن كميات معدودة وغير معدودة

جملة مثبتة

some

عرض

There are **some** girls from Luxor in my class.

Would you like **some** tea?

طلب

Can you buy **some** bread, please?

جملة منفية

any

سؤال

There isn't **any** sugar in the jar.

Are there **any** white lions in Egypt?

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Can I have (a – an – some – any) apple, please?
- 2 Would she like (some – any – a – any) coffee?
- 3 I can't find (some – a – an – any) butter in the fridge.
- 4 There (are – is – were – have) some juice in the glass.
- 5 My mom put (an – a – some – any) oranges in a bowl.

### 3. How many ...? كم العدد ...؟

We use "How many ...?" to ask about quantities of countable things.

نستخدم "كم العدد ...؟" لسؤال عن كميات الأشياء المعدودة

How many + countable اسم يعدد ...؟

- للرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

(many/ a lot of) للتعبير عن عدد كبير (a few) للتعبير عن عدد قليل (some) للتعبير عن عدد تقريبي رقم (two/ three)

eg A: How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?

B: We need (10/ a few/ many) lemons.

### 4. How much ...? كم الكمية ...؟

We use "How much ...?" to ask about quantities of uncountable things.

نستخدم "كم الكمية ...؟" لسؤال عن كميات الأشياء التي لا يمكن عددها

How much + uncountable noun اسم لا يعدد ...؟

- للرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

(much/ a lot of) للتعبير عن كمية كبيرة (some) للتعبير عن كمية تقريبية (a little) للتعبير عن كمية قليلة

eg A: How much wax do you need?

B: I need (a little/ some much) wax.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- How (much – old – many – often) pencils do you have in your bag?
- How (often – much – many – long) milk do you have in the carton?
- How (many – much – often – old) cookies did you bake yesterday?
- How (often – much – far – many) homework do you have for tomorrow?
- There are (a few – a lot of – a little – much) clouds in the sky today. I don't think it's going to rain.
- She only has (many – a lot – a little – a few) perfume oil in the bottle.
- Samar doesn't have (some – any – much – a little) pets at home.
- Mom made (much – a little – any – some) candles yesterday.
- There aren't (some – a little – much – any) tigers in Egypt.
- We still have a (some – any – lot – little) of time. Let's stop for a drink of water.





Choose the correct answer for each question.

..... is a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread.

- a) Garlic      b) Herb      c) Onion      d) Barley

..... are plants with a strong taste often used in cooking.

- a) Herbs      b) Barley      c) Paintings      d) Lentils

Ancient Egyptians ate a little meat usually at .....

- a) dinner      b) lunchtime      c) festivals      d) breakfast

Ancient Egyptians depended on the water from the Nile ..... to grow crops.

- a) mud      b) lights      c) papyrus      d) floods

Ancient Egyptians ate birds like ....., geese, and chicken.

- a) figs      b) ducks      c) goats      d) cows

Some families used ..... and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

- a) honey      b) spices      c) salt      d) dates



Put the words in the box in the correct order to make a sentence.

geese – rice – Ancient – cheese – festivals

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر - أحياء - 2024

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well. Most people in .....(1)..... Egypt only ate a little meat. They usually ate meat at .....(2)..... They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, .....(3)....., and chickens. They also ate meat and .....(4)..... from cows. They are great people of all ages.



Put the words in the box in the correct order to make sentences.

much – How – does – she – need – oil?

محافظة البحيرة - إدارة الوراق التعليمية - 2024

many – how – do – have – brothers – you?

محافظة القادر - إدارة السلام التعليمية - 2024

lemonade – the – in – There – bottle – is – some.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة جنوب الجيزة - 2024

knew – Ancient – how to – Egyptians – food – preserve.

.....

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 We use ..... (a few) butter to cook. محافظه القاهرة إدارة المرح التعليمية 2024
- 2 How ..... (many) oil do you need for the recipe? مركز الكتاب القاهرة إدارة المرح التعليمية
- 3 We need ..... (any) lemons to make juice.
- 4 How ..... (much) bottles of milk do you buy a week?
- 5 The chef needs ..... (any) milk to make the cake.
- 6 There aren't ..... (some) clouds in the sky today.
- 7 You added too ..... (many) salt on the recipe.
- 8 I only need ..... (a little) wicks for my candles.
- 9 There are ..... (lot) of fruits and vegetables on the table.
- 10 Can I have ..... (any) water, please?

**5 Punctuate the following:**

- 1 how many sandwiches do you need  
.....
- 2 there aren t any potatoes in the basket.  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

مخاطب عدد  
صفحة  
311

**“Ancient Egyptians ate well”**

paintings – a little meat – a lot of bees

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



#### Main vocabulary

caretakers	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	throne	عرش	crown	تاج
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	astonished (adj.)	مندعش	dust	تراب

#### Extra vocabulary

missing (adj.)	مفقود	palace	قصر	carpets	سجاد
precious (adj.)	ثمين	statues	تماثيل	furniture	أثاث
strange (adj.)	غريب	dining room	غرفة الطعام	royal (adj.)	ملي
prince	أمير	princess	أميرة	empty (adj.)	فارغ
surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	dangerously	بشكل خطر	curtains	ستائر
quiet (adj.)	هادئ	future	مستقبل	otherwise	وإلا
building	مبنى	vertical position	وضع رأسي	dirt	قذارة/ أتربة

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored		notice	يلاحظ	noticed
lean	يميل	leaned		knock	يطرق	knocked
explain	يشرح	explained		hurry	يتعجل	hurried
pick	يلتقط	picked		damage	يدمر	damaged

##### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood		fall	يسقط	fell

#### Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملء بـ	look carefully	ينظر بدقة
lean over	يميل على	at once	في الحال
go through	يمر من خلال	wash the dust off	يزيل الغبار
had to	كان يجب أن	have a bath	يستحم

#### Definitions

Word	Definition	
caretaker	people who look after and clean a building	الأشخاص الذين يعتنون بالمبنى
leaning	to bend or move from a vertical position	أن تتحني أو تتحرك من الوضع الرأسي
astonished	very surprised	مندعش بشدة
dust	dry dirt inside a building	القذارة/ الأتربة الجافة داخل المبنى

## The Missing King الملك المفقود



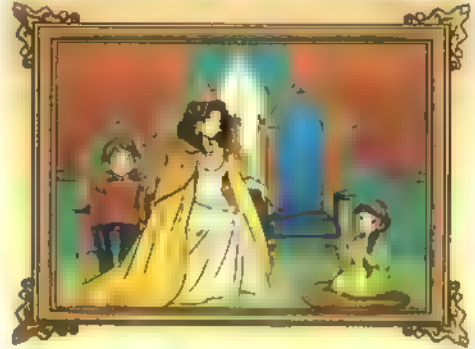
2. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

### The beginning

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children – the prince and the princess – are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!



يقيم بيترو في قصر كبير حيث والديه هما القائمون على الصيانة. القصر قديم ولا أحد يسكن فيه الآن. بيترو يحب استكشاف الغرف. إنها مليئة بأشياء مثيرة للاهتمام وقيمة - لوحات قديمة، تماثيل، سجاد، وأثاث.

في يوم من الأيام، يلاحظ بيترو شيئاً غريباً عن اللوحة الكبيرة في غرفة الطعام. عادةً، تظهر هذه اللوحة الملونة أحد الملوك القديسين جالساً على العرش، تاجاً على رأسه، وعصاً في يده. الملكة والطفلين - الأمير والأميرة - يجلسون بجانبه. لكن اليوم، مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ: إنه مفقود!

### The middle

Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!

He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."

في اليوم التالي،



## The end

Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.

Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

فهم بيتر لكنه يشرح للملك ان صولجانه على وسك السوط على لامره. شكر بيتر يا ولدي" يقول الملك. "سأعود بسرعة، ولكن في المستقبل، يرجى تنظيف اللوحات الموجودة في القصر. والا فسيكون هناك ضرر دائم! ويركض عائداً الى اللوحة ليحفظ الصولجان. الان يقوم بيتر بتنظيف كل اللوحات في القصر حتى لا يضرر. وحتى لا يضطر احد ان يترك لوحه لأحد حمام حديد!



1 Why does Peter live in a palace?

SB

2 Where did the king go?

3 Why is the princess in danger?

SB

### Tip!

You can use **pictures** in a story to help you understand new words.

You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it.

من الممكن ان تستخدم الصور في نصه لفهم الكلمات الجديدة. من الممكن ان تنظر الى كلمات حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص تساعد على فهم تلك كلمة غير معروفة.

For example:

Is there **an article** (a/an/the) before the word, or **an adjective**?

If there is, it's a **noun**. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

هل هناك اسم?

هل هناك a/an/the قبل الكلمة?

كان هناك شيء من ذلك في هذا النص بها اسم. يمكن بعد ذلك ان ننظر الى الجمل حولها ونفكر ماذا يمكن ان تكون.

هذا الاسم من الجمل.

e.g: 1 Peter's parents are the **caretakers**. (noun)

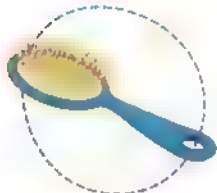
2 Peter is **astonished**. (adjective)

The scepter is **leaning** dangerously. (verb)

## Ancient Egyptian Traditions عادات مصرية قديمة

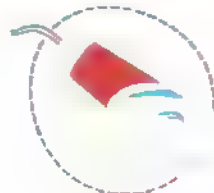
3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



hairbrush

فرشاة شعر



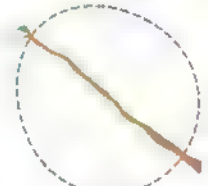
toothpaste

معجون أسنان

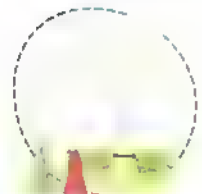


toothbrush

فرشاة أسنان



stick



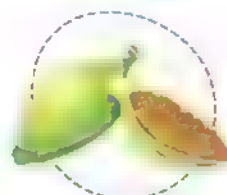
incense

بحور / عطر



powder

مسحوق



cardamom

الجبهان



cinnamon

قرفة

## Extra vocabulary

traditions	عادات	personal care	عناية شخصية	products	منتجات
popular (adj.)	شائع (مشهور)	Kapet	كانت «أسم عطر فرعون»	expensive (adj.)	غالي الثمن
ingredients	مكونات	common (adj.)	شائع / منتشر	rosemary	روزمري (نوع من التوابل)
mint	نعناع	herbs	أعشاب	minerals	معادن
cone shape	مخروطي الشكل	festivals	احتفالات	papyrus	نبات البردي
rock salt	ملح صخري	pepper	فلفل	dried (adj.)	مجفف
iris flower	زهرة السوس	mint candies	حلوى النعناع	melon	شمام (كنتابوب)
pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر	nuts	مكسرات	mixture	خليط

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
mix يخلط	mixed	tie يربط	tied
rub يفرك	rubbed	heat يسخن	heated

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wear يرتدي	wore	cut يقطع	cut

## Expressions and Phrases

first used	تم استخدامه لأول مرة	difficult to find	صعب الحصول عليه
quite strange	غريب إلى حد ما	over a fire	على النار

## العناية الشخصية في الماضي Personal Care In The Past



### 4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية كانت مستخدمة في مصر القديمة.

### Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.

The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were



made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.

In Ancient Egyptian paintings, you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

المصريون القدماء أحبوا العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى *كابيت*. كان باهظ الثمن لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من المكونات، بعضها كان من الصعب العثور عليه. لكنه كان يحتوي أيضًا على بعض الأعشاب الشائعة مثل روزماري وبasil، والتوابل مثل الكرفس والقرفة. العطور الأرخص كانت مصنوعة من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن، ثم تم خلطها مع الزيت لصنع كريم. أو ضغطوا المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروطي لصنع البخور.

### Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

لتنظيف أسنانهم، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان – عصا مع قطع صغيرة من البوصلة مربوطة بها من أحد الطرفين. المكونات التي صنعوا منها معجون الأسنان كانت نعناع، ملح صخري، فلفل، وزهور iris المجففة. وضعوا هذا المسحوق الجاف مباشرة على أسنانهم ولففوها بفرشاة الأسنان.

### Breath Mints

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

للمحافظة على رائحة أفواههم طرية طوال اليوم، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى نعناع. خلطوا القرفة، البطيخ، بذور الصنوبر، وبعض المكسرات مع العسل. ثم سخنوا الخليط فوق النار، تركوه يبرد، وقطعوه في حلوى مربعة صغيرة.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(الإجابة واجع من الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Peter lives in a big .....  
a) village      b) house      c) farm      d) palace
- 2 The palace is ..... and no one lives there now.  
a) modern      b) old      c) new      d) small
- 3 Peter likes to ..... the rooms of the palace.  
a) explore      b) clean      c) sweep      d) paint
- 4 The rooms are full of paintings, statues, ....., and furniture.  
a) carpets      b) curtains      c) food      d) windows

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 A king always sits on a .....  
a) scepter      b) desk      c) castle      d) throne
- 2 The queen lives in a/an .....  
a) palace      b) apartment      c) tent      d) home
- 3 We use a ..... to brush our hair every day.  
a) hairbrush      b) toothpaste      c) candies      d) soap
- 4 You should clean your teeth daily with a/an .....  
a) hairbrush      b) stick      c) spices      d) toothbrush
- 5 ..... are the people who look after a building.  
a) Parents      b) Students      c) Caretakers      d) Kings
- 6 The king and the queen wear ..... on their heads.  
a) thrones      b) crowns      c) scepters      d) palaces
- 7 When something is very dirty, it's usually covered in .....  
a) carpets      b) curtains      c) furniture      d) dust
- 8 The most popular ..... in Ancient Egypt is called *kapet*.  
a) shampoo      b) cream      c) perfume      d) herb

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

missing – precious – crown – royal – painting

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big ..... (1) ..... in the dining room. The painting usually shows a king sitting on the throne with a ..... (2) ..... on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the ..... (3) ..... children are next to him. But today the king's place in the painting is empty, he is ..... (4) .....



The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings, you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about ..... in Ancient Egypt.  
a) festivals      b) perfumes      c) boats      d) plants
- 2 The underlined word "expensive" means .....  
a) difficult      b) precious      c) common      d) cheap
- 3 Cheaper perfumes were made from .....  
a) flour      b) wood      c) flowers      d) sand

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What was the most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt called? .....
- 2 What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings? .....

1 Egyptians – loved – Ancient – strong – perfumes.

Egyptians – mint – The – made – candies – Ancient.

find – Where – king – Peter – does – the?

cleans – Peter – all the – in the – palace – paintings.

They mixed cinnamon, melon pine seed, and some nuts together

Ancient Egyptians made mint candies



### Writing



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



### Main vocabulary

#### Main vocabulary

salt dough	عجينة الملح	recipe	وصفة	ingredients	مكونات
baking tray	صينية خبز	spices	توابل	flavors	نكهات/ أطعمة
secret	سر	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	souks	الأسواق

#### Extra vocabulary

preparation time	وقت الإعداد	cooking	طبخ	plain flour	دقيق صافي
method	طريقة	oven	فرن	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
bowl	وعاء	flat (adj.)	مسطح	surface	سطح
3D objects	أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد	items	أغراض	paint	دهان
combination	خلطة	besides	بالإضافة إلى	dishes	أطباق
medicine	دواء	cloth	قماش	packaged	مغلقة

### Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال  
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
form يُكَوِّن / يُشَكِّل	formed	roll يلف	rolled

#### Expressions and Phrases

on a low temperature	على درجة حرارة منخفضة	work it into shapes	يُشَكِّل إلى أشكال
roll it flat	لفها بشكل مسطح	cut out shapes	يقطع إلى أشكال
until it's hard	حتى تصبح صلبة	beautifully packaged	مغلقة بطريقة جميلة

### Important sentences

- \* Special combinations of spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes.  
خلطات خاصة من التوابل هي المكون السري في العديد من الوصفات.
- \* We can also use spices to color cloth and make medicine.  
يمكننا استخدام التوابل في صبغ القماش وصنع الأدوية.
- \* Spices make great souvenirs for tourists visiting stores and souks.  
تعد التوابل هدايا تذكارية رائعة للسياح الذين يزورون المتاجر والأسواق.

## 2. Look and read:

## وصفة عجينة الملح Salt Dough Recipe

1. Preparation time وقت التحضير

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2. Ingredients المكونات

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

 $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of salt (about 125g) $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of water (about 125ml)3. Method طريقة

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.
4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.



When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب تعليمات لخطوات في عملية ما، عادة ما نقوم بترقيمها. وهذا يوضح للقراء أن عليهم القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب ليكملوا العملية بنجاح.

How much time do you need to make a salt dough recipe?

How much salt do you need to make salt dough?

What should you do after baking the items?



## Project



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

**What do we use spices for? فيما نستخدم التوابل؟**



### Egyptian flavors! النكهات المصرية!

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume, and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

مشهور مصر بتوابلها التي تستخدم في مطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلد، تعتبر الخلطات الخاصة من توابل مختلفة مكونة سرًا في العديد من الوصفات، ولكن ماذا نصنع بمسكها أن نصنع بتوابل بالخاصة إلى الاطباق اللذيذة؟ يمكنك انص ان تستخدمها بصنع بتبغور والادوية ولونين القماش. كما أنها تمثل هدايا تذكارية رائعة، وهم تعنيها بشكل جميل للسائح الذين يزورون ساحر التوابل ولاسواق.



1 What is Egypt famous for?

.....

2 What else can we make with spices?

.....

3 Where can tourists buy spices?

.....





### Choose the correct answer (a, b, c or d).

- 1 Tourists buy ..... when they visit Egypt.
  - a) houses
  - b) souvenirs
  - c) cars
  - d) cats
- 2 She likes to add ..... to her food.
  - a) spices
  - b) toothpaste
  - c) perfume
  - d) soap
- 3 ..... the oven on low temperature.
  - a) Roll
  - b) Stir
  - c) Heat
  - d) Mix
- 4 Stir the ..... until it starts to form a ball.
  - a) tray
  - b) method
  - c) mixture
  - d) bowl
- 5 You need to ..... the flour, milk, oil, and eggs to make the cake.
  - a) heat
  - b) mix
  - c) put
  - d) paint
- 6 The ..... of the salt dough are flour, salt and water.
  - a) method
  - b) ingredients
  - c) cooking
  - d) temperature
- 7 You can bake things in a/an .....
  - a) river
  - b) oven
  - c) souk
  - d) store
- 8 Tourists can buy spices at spice stores or .....
  - a) cookers
  - b) souvenirs
  - c) souks
  - d) squares

محافظة القاهرة دورة لشهر الخدمة المحلية 2024

محافظة البحيرة إدارة الهرم الجديدة التعليمية 2024



### Choose the correct words to fill in the box:

tray – cooking – temperature – flour – numbers

The salt dough recipe is my favorite recipe to make. It takes three hours for .....(1)..... . The ingredients are a cup of plain .....(2)....., 125g of salt and 125ml of water. To make it, first, heat the oven on a low .....(3)..... . Mix the ingredients in a bowl. Cut the mixture into shapes. Put the shapes in a baking .....(4)..... . And bake them until they are hard.



### Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful, and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) Egyptian restaurants                      b) Egyptian stores  
 c) Egyptian spices                            d) Egyptian streets
- 2 We can use spices in perfume, color cloth, and .....  
 a) streets                      b) medicine                      c) souks                      d) stores
- 3 The underlined word "souvenirs" means .....  
 a) presents                      b) herbs                      c) food                      d) stores

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What is Egypt famous for?
- 5 Write two uses of the Egyptian spices.

Put the words in the correct form.

1 on – a – Heat – the – oven – temperature – low.

2 are – used – Spices – cooking – in – home.

3 buy – visit – Tourists – they – when – spices – Egypt.

4 its – famous – Egypt – for – spices – is.

Punctuate the following.

egypt is famous for its spices

what else can we make with spices

Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Egyptian spices"

famous for – special combination – cooking

المطبخ  
الكوكبة  
311



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

## Lesson (1)

popsicle sticks	عصى العصاصة	perfume oil	زيت عطري
cotton rope	حبل قطنى	drops	قطرات
wax	شمع	wick	فتيل
candles	شموع	top	قمة
instructions	تعليمات	palm wax	شمع النخيل
soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
wooden spoon	ملعقة خشبية	soap container	حاوية الصابون
step	خطوة	cooker	موقد

## Lesson (2)

barley	شعير	festivals	احتفالات
paintings	رسومات	herbs	أعشاب
occasion	مناسبة	garlic	ثوم
flood	فيضان	lentils	عدس
wheat	قمح	geese	إوز
beans	فول	fridge	ثلاجة
spices	نوابل	depend on	يعتمد على
preserve	يحفظ	dry	يجفف

## Lesson (3)

caretakers	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	crown	تاج
scepter	صولجان	throne	عرش
astonished	مندعش	dust	تراب
palace	قصر	precious	ثمين
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	toothbrush	فرشاة شعر
hairbrush	فرشاة شعر	perfume	عطر
shampoo	شامبو	stick	عصا
incense	بخور / عطر	powder	مسحوق
cardamom	الجنباون	cinnamon	قرفة

## Lessons (4 &amp; 5)

salt dough	عجينة الملح	recipe	وصفة
ingredients	مكونات	method	طريقة
secret	سر	souks	الأسواق
flavors	نكهات	plain flour	دقيق صافي
oven	فرن	surface	سطح
baking tray	صينية خبز	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
combination	خلطة	medicine	دواء
cloth	قماش	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية

## Language Focus

## some/ any

Using **some** and **any** to talk about quantities (countable/ uncountable):

- some**
- There are **some** girls from Luxor in my class.
  - Would you like **some** tea?
  - Can you buy **some** bread, please?

## any

- There isn't **any** sugar in the jar
- Are there **any** white lions in Egypt?

## How many ...?

How many + countable ..... ?

للرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

two, three, some a few many, a lot of

- 9 A How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?  
B We need (10/ a few/ many) lemons.

## How much ...?

How much + uncountable ..... ?

للرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

a little some much, a lot of

- 9 How much wax do you need?  
B. I need (a little/ much/ some) wax.



## Lesson 1

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

.....	عصى مصاصة	.....	يسخن
.....	قطرات	.....	يقلب
.....	شمع	.....	تعليمات
.....	يضغط	.....	زيت عطري
.....	يعصر	.....	فتيل
.....	شموع	.....	بتلات زهور

## Lesson 2

.....	احتفالات	.....	شعير
.....	رسومات	.....	أعشاب
.....	قمح	.....	إوز
.....	يحفظ	.....	فيضان

## Lesson 3

.....	عرش	.....	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان
.....	تراب	.....	صولجان (عصا الملك)
.....	شامبو	.....	تاج
.....	فرشاة شعر	.....	صابونة
.....	معجون أسنان	.....	قرقة
.....	عطر	.....	فرشاة أسنان
.....	بخور	.....	كريم
.....	الجبهان	.....	قرقة

## Lessons 4 &amp; 5

.....	عجينة الملح	.....	مكونات
.....	طريقة	.....	وقت الإعداد
.....	تكهات	.....	نوابل
.....	خلطة	.....	دواء
.....	هدايا تذكارية	.....	قماش



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

## How to write instructions for making candles:

- First, we need + (نحتاج إلى). (نحتاج إلى شمع).
- We need + (الكمية التي نحتاجها من كل مكون).
- Then, + (لنصود شمع من شمع).
- Finally, + (أجر حصو، في خمس نسمة).

## Instructions for making candles

Here are the instructions for making candles: First, we need wax, wicks, and perfume oil. We need 450 grams of wax to make three candles. Then, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Squeeze about 40 drops of oil on hot wax. Next, put the wax into shaping glasses. Put some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks in the glasses. Finally, leave it cool before getting hard.

## How to write about Ancient Egyptians personal care traditions:

### Answer these questions:

- When were most personal care products first used?
- What was the most famous perfume in Ancient Egypt called?
- What did Ancient Egyptians use as toothbrushes?
- How did Ancient Egyptians keep their mouths fresh all day?

## Personal care in Ancient Egypt

Most personal care products were first used in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt was called *kapet*. They also used sticks with pieces of papyrus at the end as toothbrushes. Ancient Egyptians kept their mouths fresh all day by making mint candies.

## How to write a recipe:

- Write the preparation time (using minutes/hours).
- Write the needed ingredients (using units of measurement like grams/millimeters).
- Write the steps of the recipe using (inf.).

## Salt dough recipe

It takes 10 minutes for the mixture and 3 hours for cooking to make the salt dough recipe. You need 1 cup of plain flour, 125g of salt and 125ml of water. First, heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the flour, salt, and the water in a bowl until they form a ball. Put it on a flat surface and cut it into shapes. Bake the shapes for three hours until they are hard. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

يُتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

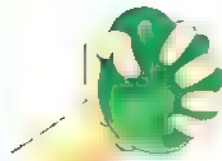
### 1 Match the verbs to the pictures:

1 stir

2 squeeze

3 press

4 heat



### 2 Complete the dialogs with How much or How many:

1 Hani : .....milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?

Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2 Fareeda : .....students are there in your English class, Dalia?

Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3 Sherif : .....math problems did you do yesterday?

Karim : Just a few. They were difficult!

4 Rana : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?

Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

5 Hana : .....honey do we have, Ayman?

Ayman : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.

### 3 Circle the correct answer:

1 Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.

2 Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?

3 There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?

4 There are a few/ a little lemons in the fridge, so we don't need any more.

5 How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?

6 How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?



## Listening

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 The Ancient Egyptians loved strong .....  
a) animals      b) people      c) crops      d) perfumes
- 2 *Kapet* was ..... because it had a lot of ingredients.  
a) cheap      b) expensive      c) weak      d) bad
- 3 *Kapet* also had a few common ..... and spices in it.  
a) plants      b) herbs      c) flowers      d) fruits
- 4 Cheaper perfumes had ingredients that were ..... with oil to make cream.  
a) heated      b) stirred      c) bakes      d) mixed



## Reading

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 "....." are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.  
a) Flowers      b) Herbs      c) Fruits      d) Ducks
- 2 We need some ..... to make candles.  
a) wool      b) water      c) wood      d) wax
- 3 What is the ..... of this dish?  
a) to      b) recipe      c) oil      d) receive
- 4 ..... the wax to melt it.  
a) Heat      b) Press      c) Squeeze      d) Cool

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

محافظة المنوفية - إدارة سويس الليان التعليمية 2024

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

spices – dried – a few – preserve – honey

محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt and that means there was .....(1).....! People used it with bread and cream to make cakes. Some families also knew how to use .....(2)..... and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to .....(3)..... food. They .....(4)..... fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt! The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. They also keep their mouths fresh all day by using mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then, they cut the mixture into small square candies.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about .....  
 a) personal care in the past      b) Egyptian perfumes  
 c) mint      d) some herbs
- The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt was called .....  
 a) melon      b) incense      c) *kaper*      d) cinnamon
- They cut the mixture into .....square candies.  
 a) small      b) big      c) long      d) tall

## Answer the following questions:

- What were the ingredients of the cheaper perfumes? .....
- Why did the Ancient Egyptians use mint candies? .....



## Writing

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

1 much – How – does – have – she – juice?

2 has – He – milk – in his – a little – coffee.

3 a lot of – There are – lovely – lemons – Egypt – in.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 There aren't ..... (some) tigers in Egypt.

2 Please, hurry. We don't have ..... (many) time.

### 7 Punctuate the following:

1

ancient Egyptians made mint candies

### 8 Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"Salt dough recipe"  
 plain flour – 3 hours for cooking

مجاب عنه  
 صفحة  
 311

5



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

Save more time

85 - 100%

Well done!

243



## 1 Read and complete the dialogue:

instructions – salt – flour – have – making

Mom I love ..... things. Why don't we make something new?

Laila : Do you ..... something in mind?

Mom I have some plain ..... We can make a salt dough.

Laila : A ..... dough! What a great idea!

Mom Here are the ..... for making the dough.


## 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 (Str Squeeze Bake) about 40 drops of perfume oil.
- 2 She needs 450 grams of (paper - plastic - wax) to make three candles.
- 3 Ancient Egyptians used (spices - sticks - herbs) with papyrus as toothbrushes.
- 4 A combination of (minerals - candles - spices) is the secret ingredient in many recipes.
- 5 First, (eat - cut - heat) the oven on a low temperature.
- 6 How (many - much - often) eggs does she have for breakfast?
- 7 I think Mom needs (a few - many - a little) honey for the recipe.
- 8 How (often - many - much) salt do we have in the jar?
- 9 Nadia has (much - a little - a lot of) friends at school.
- 10 There is a (few - lot - little) perfume oil in the bottle.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 is – famous – Egypt – its – spices – for.2 make – Why – don't – we – new – something?3 40 drops – Squeeze – oil – of – about.4 time – do – we – How – much – need?fridge – There – in – isn't – any – the – bread.

# Final Revision and Exams

- 
- Revision on Vocabulary
  - Revision on Grammar
  - Exercises on each 2 Units
  - 12 Final Exams
  - 3 Azhar Exams
  - امتحان دمج 2



Unit 1

apartment block	مبنى سكني	harvest	يحصد	competition	مسابقة
roof	سطح	dates	بلح (تمر)	logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)
gymnastics	ألعاب الحمار	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	community	مجتمع
organization	منظمة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	volunteer	متطوع
mini	مصغر	neighborhood	حي (مكان)	forest	غابة
urban	حضرى	effects	تأثيرات	aid	مساعدة
nature	الطبيعة	lettuce	خس	organic	عضوى
foreign	أجنبي	data	بيانات	project	مشروع
species	فصائل / أنواع	the countryside	الريف	art works	أعمال فنية
view	منظر	theater performance	أداء مسرحي	hang out	يتجول / يتسكع
local residents	السكان المحليون	pass through	يمر عبر	miss	يفتقد
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	noisy	صاخب	selfish	أناني
giant	عملاق	hole	حفرة	share	يشارك
village	قرية	leaves	أوراق الشجر	porridge	عصيدة (أكلة شعبية في أسكتلندا)
Scotland	أسكتلندا	Scottish	أسكتلندي	tiny	صغير الحجم

Unit 2

shy	خجول	website	موقع إلكتروني	calm	هادئ
court	ملعب	borrow	يستعير	scared	خائف
polite	مؤدب	fantasy	خيال	messy	فوضوى
gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية	planet	كوكب	organized	منظم
laboratory	معمل	fur	فرو	nervous	متوتر / عصبي
experiments	تجارب	alive	على قيد الحياة	independent	مستقل
intelligent	ذكي	physical education	التربية الرياضية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
sharp	حاد	worried	قلق	fountain	نافورة
Earth	كوكب الأرض	claws	مخالب	textbooks	الكتب الدراسية
worksheets	ورق تدريبات	pet	يدل / يلاطف	equipment	أدوات
hare	أنثى الأرنب البري	benches	مقاعد	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات

# Practice



## on Vocabulary (Units 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They love working in the garden. It is a big green space on the roof.  
a) society      b) community      c) block      d) street
- 2 To get organic food, we use natural  
a) tools      b) gardens      c) chemicals      d) fertilizer
- 3 They are . They take no money.  
a) teachers      b) doctors      c) farmers      d) volunteers
- 4 I like to eat vegetables and fruits which are organic with no  
a) chemicals      b) leaves      c) roots      d) dates
- 5 " " are the people who live in a neighborhood.  
a) Kids      b) Classmates      c) Local residents      d) Foreigners
- 6 There's someone here, I can hear his .  
a) voice      b) clothes      c) books      d) face
- 7 " " means to go from one place to another.  
a) Miss      b) Pass through      c) Relax      d) Describe
- 8 There's a near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.  
a) minaret      b) souk      c) palace      d) railway line
- 9 Cats have claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.  
a) soft      b) dull      c) sharp      d) blunt
- 10 My sister is . Her books are on the floor.  
a) calm      b) shy      c) messy      d) nervous
- 11 He always says please and sorry. He is .  
a) nervous      b) messy      c) polite      d) unfriendly
- 12 You shouldn't be , share your toys with your friends.  
a) beautiful      b) selfish      c) kind      d) nice
- 13 If a new student is , we should help him make new friends.  
a) nervous      b) clever      c) polite      d) kind
- 14 Hani is very . He shows respect to everyone.  
a) polite      b) messy      c) lazy      d) organized
- 15 My school has a water .  
a) mountain      b) fountain      c) dry      d) yard
- 16 All students love the lessons because they can play football in the playground.  
a) math      b) English      c) science      d) physical education
- 17 Cats have soft which is nice to touch.  
a) claws      b) fur      c) teeth      d) eyes





18 The \_\_\_\_\_ is the place where we do experiments.

- a) library                      b) playground                      c) laboratory                      d) hall

19 \_\_\_\_\_ are animals which we can live with.

- a) Pets                      b) Bats                      c) Beats                      d) Bites

20 Omar is \_\_\_\_\_ and kind. We all love him.

- a) bad                      b) terrible                      c) friendly                      d) ugly

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

**A)**

caretaker – adult – Clever – slow reader – messy

People are very different. .... (1).... people are intelligent and good at work. Sometimes, children can't do lots of things, so they need an .... (2).... to help them. A person who takes ages to finish a book is called a .... (3).... and the person who looks after and cleans a building is called a .... (4)....

**B)**

volunteers – new – organization – wildlife – foreign

Mini Forest is an .... (1).... which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our .... (2)...., like plants. We never grow .... (3).... plants in our projects. We rarely have ... (4).... to help us in planting.

**C)**

home – laboratories – Community – playground – grade

My school is near my house. It's big and clean. It has two .... (1).... where we have science lessons. I play football and basketball in the .... (2).... with my friends. I'm in .... (3).... five. I love Mrs Nora who teaches me English. I have three English lessons a week. I go .... (4).... at two o'clock, and have lunch with my family.

**D)**

friendly – walk – people – fur – animals

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft .... (1).... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually .... (2).... They like .... (3)...., but they are independent. We don't need to take them for a ... (4).... every day.



## The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

### Affirmative Form

He/ She/ It + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) + s/ es/ ies ...

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

live – lives

e.g. Omar lives in Cairo.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (s/x/ sh/ ch/ z)

يضاف لها (es):

dress – dresses

e.g. Mai dresses in pink.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن (v) يحذف الـ

(v) ويضاف لها (ies):

cry – cries

e.g. The baby always cries.

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

- The students learn at the classroom.

- The birds fly in the sky.

### Negative Form

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) ...

- Maged doesn't speak French.

We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) ...

- They don't study at night.

### Yes/No Question:

Question السؤال

Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf) ... ?
Does	he/ she/ it	

A Do you like pizza?

B: Yes, I do.

Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject ( ... )	do / does
No,		don't / doesn't

A. Does Walaa have a pet?

B: No, she doesn't.

### Wh-question

Wh- word	do	I/ you/ we/ they	+ (inf) ... ?
كلمة الاستفهام	does	he/ she/ it	

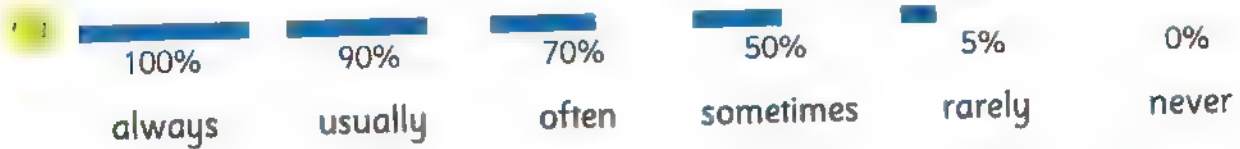
- A Where do you come from?

- B I come from London.

## Adverbs of frequency الظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (وبعد الفعل be) للتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.



Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often":

السؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث يستخدم (How often):

How often + do/ does + subject (مبتدأ) + (inf) ...?

Answer: الإجابة:

Subject + adverb of frequency + main verb.

Subject + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

A How often do you visit your uncle?

B I always visit my uncle on Fridays.

A How often does she feel tired after work?

B She is never tired after work.

We can use time expressions to talk about how often we repeat the action.

يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية للتحدث عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

every day

once a week

twice a month

three times a year

- I study English with my sister every day.

- Sara watches TV twice a week.

## Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use relative pronouns "who", "which", and "where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

### who

We use "who" to talk about people.

نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشخاص.

eg The man **who** sells flowers is my uncle.

### which

We use "which" to talk about things.

نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشياء.

eg My uncle planted the tree **which** grows apples.

### where

We use "where" to talk about places.

The beach **where** we spend the summer is really hot.

## -ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

excited متحمس - interested مهتم - tired مُرْهَق - surprised متفاجئ

## -ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ -ing لوصف الأشخاص، الأماكن، أو الأشياء التي تسبب لنا المشاعر.

eg exciting مثير - tiring مُتْعِب - boring ممل - surprising مفاجئ



# Practice



## on Grammar (Units 1 & 2)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 **A:** How often does your sister watch TV? **B:** She watches TV \_\_\_\_\_ a week.  
a) one                      b) two                      c) first                      d) twice
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ football in the club.  
a) always play              b) plays always              c) always plays              d) play always
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Hala cook lunch every day? **B:** Yes, she does.  
a) Do                      b) Is                      c) Does                      d) Are
- 4 **A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to school? **B:** I go to school every day.  
a) many                      b) much                      c) long                      d) often
- 5 Omar \_\_\_\_\_ like playing video games.  
a) isn't                      b) don't                      c) aren't                      d) doesn't
- 6 She \_\_\_\_\_ to music every night.  
a) listening                      b) listen                      c) listens                      d) listened
- 7 My sister never \_\_\_\_\_ TV.  
a) watch                      b) watches                      c) watching                      d) watched
- 8 The sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the east.  
a) rises                      b) rising                      c) rise                      d) will rise
- 9 My friend \_\_\_\_\_ late for school.  
a) always is                      b) never is                      c) are never                      d) is always
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ to the club every week.  
a) goes                      b) went                      c) go                      d) going
- 11 They don't \_\_\_\_\_ their uncles on the weekend.  
a) visited                      b) visiting                      c) visit                      d) visits
- 12 Salma doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.  
a) playing                      b) played                      c) plays                      d) play
- 13 He \_\_\_\_\_ eats dates as a snack. He loves them!  
a) doesn't                      b) never                      c) usually                      d) not
- 14 This book is \_\_\_\_\_. I don't like it.  
a) scared                      b) bored                      c) boring                      d) interesting
- 15 I was very \_\_\_\_\_ when my team won the match.  
a) interesting                      b) boring                      c) excited                      d) scary
- 16 Our party was \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
a) amazed                      b) amazing                      c) excited                      d) interest



- 17 The flowers ..... grow in our garden are beautiful.  
 a) who                      b) where                      c) when                      d) which
- 18 This is the building ..... we do physical education.  
 a) who                      b) which                      c) where                      d) whose
- 19 My school is the place ..... my uncle works.  
 a) who                      b) when                      c) which                      d) where
- 20 Hassan is the boy ..... helped me yesterday.  
 a) when                      b) which                      c) what                      d) who

 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 ..... (Do) your friend like studying English?
- 2 I don't ..... (visiting) my grandparents on Fridays.
- 3 I ..... (always) make a cake. I don't like it.
- 4 How ..... (many) does she go to the library?
- 5 How often ..... (do) your teacher give you homework?
- 6 She ..... (cook) food for her family every day.
- 7 She never ..... (eat) unhealthy food.
- 8 They ..... (always are) ready for the exams.
- 9 She ..... (meets always) up with her cousins on Fridays.
- 10 My father ..... (goes always) to work by car.
- 11 I was so ..... (frightening) when I saw the lion.
- 12 These are the shoes ..... (who) I wear to play football.
- 13 The park is a place ..... (who) he flies his kite.
- 14 Is Magdy the boy ..... (which) lives in your building?
- 15 This is the place ..... (wnich) students study science.
- 16 An ostrich is a big bird ..... (who) can't fly.
- 17 I was ..... (surprising) to see Mr Sherif in the club.
- 18 The film is ..... (interested).
- 19 Mr Adel is the teacher ..... (which) helps me a lot.
- 20 The book was really ..... (interested).



## Unit 3

go quad biking in the desert	يركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء	bear	دب	explore the souks	يستكشف الأسواق
helmet	خوذة	disappoint	يحبط	climb the Bab Zuweila minaret	يتسلق (يصعد إلى) منئذنة باب زويلة
instructions	تعليمات	hill	تل	take photos	يلتقط صوراً
dome	قبة	ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهي	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
vacation plans	خطط لقضاء العطلة	secret	سر	visit the Manial Palace Museum	يزور متحف قصر المنيل
fear	خوف	monument	أثر تاريخي	theme park	مدينة الملاهي
dust	غبار	heights	ارتفاعات	puddle	بركة مياه
freezer	المجمد (الفريزر)	deer	غزال	carnival	مهرجان ترفيهي
adventures	مغامرات	stream	نهر صغير	brave	شجاع
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	waterfalls	شلالات	screens	شاشات
realistic	واقعي	destination	وجهة	square	ميدان
the Orient Train	قطار الشرق	monastery	دير	company	شركة
tickets	تذاكر	discount	خصم	ocean	محيط

## Unit 4

celebrate	يحتفل	event	حدث	noodles	شعرية
confirm	يؤكد	decorate the birthday cake	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	string	خيوط
blow out	ينفخ (يطفئ) الشمع	email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
hard	بجد	present	هدية	formal	رسمي
let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية	exams	امتحانات	flame	لهب
character	شخصية	hang up the streamers	يعلق الشرائط	indoors	في الداخل (بالمزلة)
fire	حريق	figure out	يكتشف	make a playlist	يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني
documentary	فيلم وثائقي	Mother's Day	عيد الأم	prize	جائزة
send the invitations	يرسل الدعوات	history	تاريخ	local community	المجتمع المحلي
costume	زي تكتري	candles	شموع	breath	نفس
attend	يحضر	scissors	مقص	guests	ضيوف
school hall	قاعة المدرسة	details	تفاصيل	adult	شخص بالغ
birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد	reply	يرد	celebration	احتفال





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 There are amazing \_\_\_\_\_ to try like the rollercoaster.  
a) groups                      b) rides                      c) flights                      d) tickets.
- 2 After a long time; we arrived at our \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) destination                      b) pollution                      c) population                      d) information
- 3 I like going to the \_\_\_\_\_ to ride the rollercoaster.  
a) beach                      b) desert                      c) theme park                      d) museum
- 4 Fatima \_\_\_\_\_ to face her fear and climbed up the hill.  
a) divided                      b) provided                      c) decided                      d) guided
- 5 You look tired. You need to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cycle                      b) play                      c) relax                      d) let
- 6 The ancient mosque has a very high \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cinema                      b) minaret                      c) company                      d) mountain
- 7 Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the Bab Zuweila minaret.  
a) climb                      b) jump                      c) arrive                      d) plan
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ ride is very scary and you get wet.  
a) deserts                      b) mountains                      c) caves                      d) waterfalls
- 9 He is afraid \_\_\_\_\_ heights.  
a) to                      b) of                      c) on                      d) at
- 10 We need an adult to let off the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cakes                      b) balloons                      c) fireworks                      d) streamers
- 11 We use \_\_\_\_\_ language when we speak or write to strangers.  
a) informal                      b) bad                      c) formal                      d) dirty
- 12 People make mint tea for \_\_\_\_\_ in their homes.  
a) guests                      b) thieves                      c) animals                      d) birds
- 13 The word celebration means \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) party                      b) game                      c) invitation                      d) experience
- 14 To "blow \_\_\_\_\_" is to send air through your mouth.  
a) out                      b) in                      c) of                      d) for
- 15 We can ask Ahmed to \_\_\_\_\_ a playlist.  
a) send                      b) make                      c) bang                      d) blow
- 16 We let off \_\_\_\_\_ on my birthday. It was amazing.  
a) fireworks                      b) toys                      c) streamers                      d) invitations
- 17 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ forward to the party to see my friends?  
a) cycling                      b) putting                      c) looking                      d) making
- 18 I am writing to \_\_\_\_\_ you to our school's Mother's Day celebration.  
a) invent                      b) discover                      c) invite                      d) describe





19 We are wearing \_\_\_\_\_ in the party.

- a) costumes      b) celebration      c) fireworks      d) invitation

20 Hala is sending \_\_\_\_\_ to her friends to attend the party.

- a) inventions      b) decorations      c) fireworks      d) invitations

21 \_\_\_\_\_ are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.

- a) Peaches      b) Noodles      c) Fish      d) Presents



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

**A)**

book – rode – shows – popcorn – tired

Amr and his sister Huda went to the carnival on Monday. They ..... (1)..... on the rollercoaster. Amr ate ..... (2)..... and a burger. Huda drank lemonade and ate an apple. They watched many exciting ..... (3)..... . They were ..... (4)..... when they went home.

**B)**

monastery – camels – Red – biking – food

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the ..... (1)..... Sea. Many tourists like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. Tourist can quad ..... (2)..... in the desert. They like visiting St. Catherine's ..... (3)..... . They also like riding on ..... (4)..... and relaxing at the beach.

**C)**

football – cycling – relax – indoors – exercises

Ahmed is studying hard for his exams. He doesn't spend all his time ..... (1)..... . He goes outside, and he ..... (2)..... . He goes running in the morning. He goes ..... (3)..... with his dad at the weekends. He also sees his friends a few times a week. He also visits his grandparents. Ahmed knows that it's important to ..... (4)..... and have fun sometimes.

**D)**

blew – decorated – amazing – invitations – dark

Last week was my sister's birthday party. It was in our garden. The party was ..... (1)..... and my sister was very happy. We all helped my sister. My mother ..... (2)..... the birthday cake. I sent the ..... (3)..... . All her friends came and gave her presents. My brother ..... (4)..... up the balloons. My father hung up the streamers.



# What?

## لو / عندما (الحالة الصفرية) If/When (Zero Conditional)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

### Form

If/When


present simple  
جملة في المضارع البسيط

present simple/ can + (inf.) ...  
جملة في المضارع البسيط / فعل ناقص

e.g: If it rains, the grass gets wet.

### Questions: السؤال

Wh word

do/ does/  
can

subject  
الفاعل

(inf.)  
الفعل في المصدر

if/  
when

present simple ... ?  
جملة في المضارع البسيط

When do we get to Giza if we take the bus?

## حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت Prepositions of time

We use prepositions of time at, on, and in, to say when something happens.

at

at: used with times

- at lunchtime في وقت الغداء
- at ten o'clock في الساعة العاشرة
- at midnight في منتصف الليل
- at midday في منتصف اليوم

on

on: used with days and dates

- on April 13<sup>th</sup> في الـ 13 من إبريل
- on holidays في الإجازات
- on Monday في يوم الإثنين
- on the weekend في الإجازة الأسبوعية

in

in: used with times of the day, months, seasons, and years

- in 2022 في عام 2022
- in the spring في فصل الربيع
- in April في شهر إبريل
- in the morning في الصباح

## Unit 2

## The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking.

Affirmative Form: الهيئة الإيجابية

I  
He/ She/ It  
We/ They/ You

am ('m)  
is ('s)  
are ('re)

+ (inf.) المصدر في المصدر + ing ...

I am reading a newspaper.

They're playing tennis.

Negative Form: الهيئة السلبية

I  
He/ She/ It  
We/ They/ You

am not ('m not)  
is not (isn't)  
are not (aren't)

+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ...

Mom isn't cooking dinner.

The children aren't watching TV now.

Yes/No-Question: السؤال بنعم/لاQuestion السؤال

Is  
Are

he/ she/ it  
you/ we/ they

+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ... ?

Answer الإجابة

Yes,  
No,

subject ( الفاعل )

is / are.  
isn't / aren't.

A: Is Nader playing the piano? B: Yes, he is.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهام

is  
are

he/ she/ it  
you/ we/ they

+ (inf.) المصدر في المصدر + ing ... ?

What are you doing? B: I'm doing my homework.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

this + (time)  
هذا + وقت

at the moment  
في الوقت الحالي

today

now

# Practice



## on Grammar (Units 3 & 4)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 If you are hungry, you \_\_\_\_\_ these sandwiches.  
a) has                      b) can have                      c) had                      d) having
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ a stomachache when I eat too much cake.  
a) getting                      b) got                      c) get                      d) gets
- 3 When she \_\_\_\_\_ cold, she can wear her jacket.  
a) felt                      b) feels                      c) feeling                      d) feel
- 4 They can't go out if the weather \_\_\_\_\_ hot.  
a) is                      b) will be                      c) are                      d) were
- 5 Plants die if you \_\_\_\_\_ water them.  
a) doesn't                      b) isn't                      c) aren't                      d) don't
- 6 If you \_\_\_\_\_ busy, we can talk later.  
a) will be                      b) were                      c) are                      d) is
- 7 We have English \_\_\_\_\_ 11 a.m.  
a) on                      b) up                      c) in                      d) at
- 8 We always travel to Alexandria \_\_\_\_\_ summer.  
a) on                      b) of                      c) in                      d) on
- 9 My mother's birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ May 13<sup>th</sup>.  
a) on                      b) of                      c) in                      d) on
- 10 What are they \_\_\_\_\_ now?  
a) do                      b) does                      c) did                      d) doing
- 11 We \_\_\_\_\_ playing football now. We are playing tennis.  
a) are                      b) is                      c) was                      d) aren't
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ she collecting magnets at the moment?  
a) Do                      b) Is                      c) Are                      d) Does
- 13 I \_\_\_\_\_ listening to music now.  
a) is                      b) are                      c) am                      d) was
- 14 She is \_\_\_\_\_ a party this week.  
a) organizes                      b) organize                      c) organizing                      d) organized
- 15 We are \_\_\_\_\_ to make the birthday cake.  
a) help                      b) helps                      c) helped                      d) helping
- 16 I \_\_\_\_\_ in the football match today.  
a) 'm not                      b) isn't                      c) aren't                      d) weren't





- 17 A Are you traveling to Alexandria this week? B Yes, we .....  
 a) aren't                      b) is                      c) am                      d) are
- 18 The girls ..... in the park now.  
 a) cycling                      b) cycle                      c) is cycling                      d) are cycling
- 19 He ..... playing games at the moment.  
 a) was                      b) are                      c) were                      d) is
- 20 My mom ..... the birthday cake now.  
 a) decorates                      b) decorate                      c) is decorating                      d) are decorating



### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I stay home if I ..... (was) ill.
- 2 If he ..... (press) the button, the machine works.
- 3 When you ..... (had) regular breaks, you remember more.
- 4 We don't go to school ..... (at) summer. المناسبات 2024
- 5 He likes to listen to music ..... (in) midnight.
- 6 My father arrived ..... (in) six o'clock yesterday.
- 7 I got many presents ..... (at) my birthday. الهدايا في المولد 2024
- 8 Dad was born ..... (at) November 1982. 2 نوفمبر 2024
- 9 We went to Alexandria ..... (on) train. 21
- 10 He was born ..... (at) March. مارس 2024
- 11 If you heat sugar, it ..... (melted).
- 12 If you ..... (doesn't) water plants, they die. النباتات لا تنمو بدون ماء 2024
- 13 If we go by bus, it ..... (be) quicker.
- 14 We ..... (goes) to the theater to watch a play now.
- 15 She is studying for her exam ..... (last) week. الامتحان في الأسبوع الماضي 2024
- 16 She's ..... (do) her homework now. القيام بالواجب المنزلي الآن 2024
- 17 They're ..... (play) with balloons now.
- 18 Are they ..... (watch) a funny movie?
- 19 We ..... (eat) our lunch at the moment.
- 20 Nesma is ..... (wear) a hat.

## Units 5&6



## A) Revision on Vocabulary

### Unit 5

go on a voyage	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	culture	ثقافة	complicated	معقد
telescope	تليسكوب	ride a camel	يركب جملاً	discovery	اكتشاف
fascinated	منبهر	cabin	كابينة / مقصورة	clay	طين
wasteland	أرض قاحلة (خالية)	port	ميناء	sail by ship	يسبحر بالسفينة
archaeologists	علماء الآثار	dromedary	الجمال العربي	sailing boat	قارب شراعى
take a trip	يقوم برحلة قصيرة	tools	أدوات	legends	أساطير
skills	مهارات	go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة طويلة	caravan	قافلة
incredible	لا يصدق	experiences	تجارب	sand dunes	كتبان رملية
sculptures	منحوتات	explorer	مستكشف	surprising	مفاجئ
mysterious	غامض	frightening	مخيف	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)
civilization	حضارة	exhausted	مرهق	waves	أمواج
sails	أشرعة	mystery	لغز	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
sway	يتمايل	peaceful	مسالم	felucca	قارب شراعى (فلوكة)

### Unit 6

popsicle sticks	عصى العصا	palm wax	شمع النخيل	perfume	عطر
soap container	حاوية الصابون	drops	قطرات	barley	شعير
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	wax	شمع	festivals	احتفالات
stick	عصا	wick	فتيل	herbs	أعشاب
incense	بخور / عطر	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	perfume oil	زيت عطري
preserve	يحفظ	powder	مسحوق	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
caretakers	القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان	cardamom	الهيل	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
crown	تاج	cinnamon	قرقة	baking tray	صينية خبز
soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	ingredients	مكونات
combination	خلطة	throne	عرش	rosemary	روزماري (نوع من التوابل)
cotton rope	جبل قطني	astonished	مندهش	personal care	عناية شخصية





**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 We can explore the \_\_\_\_\_ island.  
a) mysterious      b) nervous      c) bad      d) ugly
- 2 We went on a long \_\_\_\_\_ by sea. We sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula.  
a) trip      b) voyage      c) carriage      d) flight
- 3 " \_\_\_\_\_ " is the art made from stone or wood.  
a) Adventure      b) Sculpture      c) Explorer      d) Inspiration
- 4 Marco Polo used his \_\_\_\_\_ to see the island.  
a) microscope      b) caravan      c) telescope      d) nightmare
- 5 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.  
a) engineer      b) archaeologist      c) carpenter      d) guide
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.  
a) Clay      b) Metal      c) Wood      d) Paper
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a group of camels and people traveling together.  
a) puddle      b) throne      c) tour guide      d) caravan
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.  
a) bus      b) car      c) train      d) felucca
- 9 Marco Polo wrote a \_\_\_\_\_ about his experiences.  
a) diary      b) story      c) film      d) poem
- 10 Captain Eslam had the \_\_\_\_\_ to sail the felucca.  
a) sails      b) roads      c) oud      d) skills
- 11 The king has a \_\_\_\_\_ on his head.  
a) princess      b) palace      c) crown      d) gloves
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ are the people who look after and clean a building.  
a) Farmers      b) Caretakers      c) Carpenters      d) Plumbers
- 13 She likes to add \_\_\_\_\_ to her food.  
a) spices      b) toothpaste      c) perfume      d) soap
- 14 " \_\_\_\_\_ " are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.  
a) Herbs      b) Clay      c) Guests      d) Noodles
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ are the cotton ropes inside the candles.  
a) Sticks      b) Bottles      c) Wicks      d) Cartons
- 16 We need some popsicle \_\_\_\_\_ to hold the wicks up in the glasses.  
a) stickers      b) sticks      c) steam      d) star

- 17 If you ..... lemons, you get lemon juice.  
 a) heat                      b) stir                      c) hold                      d) squeeze
- 18 The queens live in a/an .....  
 a) palace                      b) apartment                      c) tent                      d) home
- 19 You should clean your teeth daily with a/an .....  
 a) hairbrush                      b) ax                      c) spices                      d) toothbrush
- 20 Tourists buy ..... when they visit Egypt.  
 a) houses                      b) souvenirs                      c) cars                      d) cats



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

**A)**

dry – fascinated – dunes – wind – move

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was .....(1)..... by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the .....(2)..... were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The .....(3)..... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert “the .....(4)..... sea” in their language.

**B)**

experience – wood – River – captain – sail

Ali had an amazing experience yesterday. He went on a felucca on the .....(1)..... Nile with his friend Tamer. A felucca is an Egyptian sailing boat which is made of .....(2)..... They got on the felucca with a captain called Saber. Saber had the skills to .....(3)..... the felucca. They went slowly down the river and enjoyed the view. It was a lovely .....(4)..... for them.

**C)**

spoon – bowl – lovely – cooker – add

We need oil, flower petals, and soap crystals to make soap. First, put the ingredients for your soap in a .....(1)..... Heat the ingredients on a .....(2)..... Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden .....(3)..... and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, .....(4)..... them into a soap container.

**D)**

spices – dried – a few – preserve – honey

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt and that means there was .....(1)..... ! People used it with bread and cream to make cakes. Some families also knew how to use .....(2)..... and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to .....(3)..... food. They .....(4)..... fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.





## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن الأفعال أو المواقف المنتهية في الماضي.

### 1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):

talk - talked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d):

move → moved

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ed):

carry → carried

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.

clap → clapped

### 2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

eg go → went

make → made

#### Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل) Subject

eg Hana cooked a tasty dinner yesterday.

#### Negative Form: صيغة النفي

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + didn't + Subject

eg I didn't travel to France last year.

#### Yes/No Question: السؤال بنعم/لا

Question السؤال A: Did + subject + (inf.) ... ؟

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

did.

didn't.

eg A: Did Mai have her breakfast?

B: Yes, she did.

B: No, she didn't.

#### Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام أقوال الاستفهام

Wh- word

did

subject

(inf.)

?

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل)



What did you do yesterday? B: I swam in the sea.

## Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday بالماضي - أمس - ago منذ - last الماضي - in the past بالماضي

## Verb to "be" (am/ is/ are) in the past simple فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

Verb to "be" changes according to the subject in the past simple.

## Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It + was ...

I was at my grandpa's house yesterday.

We/ They/ You + were ...

The kids were at the beach last weekend.

## Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

I/ He/ She/ It + was not (wasn't) ...

He was not at home last Saturday.

We/ They/ You + were not (weren't) ...

We were not cold yesterday.

## Yes/No Question: السؤال بنعم/لا:

Question السؤال

Was  
Were

I/ he/ she/ it ...?  
we/ they/ you ...?

Answer الإجابة

Yes,  
No,

subject (فاعل)

was/ were.  
wasn't/ weren't.

A: Was she at the park last Sunday?

B: Yes, she was.

A: Were you tired this morning?

B: No, I wasn't.

## Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word  
كلمة الاستفهام

was  
were

I / he / she / it  
we / they / you

...?

A: Where was he yesterday?

B: He was at school.



# 1. Countable and Uncountable nouns

## Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

### Countable nouns

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.

- يسبق المفرد منها أداة النكرة "a" إذا بدأ بصوت ساكن و "an" إذا بدأ بصوت متحرك.

eg a mango / mangoes  
an egg / eggs

### Uncountable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

eg sugar - water

We use **some** and **any** to talk about quantities (countable/uncountable):

استخدام **some** و **any** للحديث عن الكميات (المعدودة/ غير المعدودة):

جملة مثبتة

There are **some** boys in the classroom.

**some**

عرض

Would you like **some** coffee?

طلب

Could I have **some** salt, please?

جملة منفية

There isn't **any** jam in the fridge.

**any**

سؤال

Do you have **any** children?

## 2. How many ...? كم العدد...؟

How many + countable noun ... + اسم يعدد ؟

We use "How many ?" to ask about quantities of countable things.

نستخدم "كم العدد ؟" للسؤال عن كميات الأسماء المعدودة

لنرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

many, a lot of للتعبير عن عدد كبير    a few للتعبير عن عدد قليل    some للتعبير عن عدد تقريبي    two, three, رقم

A How many pens and pencils do you have?

B: I have a lot of pens. I have a few pencils.

## 3. How much ...? كم الكمية...؟

We use "How much ..?" to ask about quantities of uncountable things.

كم الكمية...؟ للسؤال عن كميات لأسماء اسم لا يمكن عددها

How much + uncountable noun ... + اسم لا يعدد ؟

لنرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

a little للتعبير عن كمية قليلة    some للتعبير عن كمية تقريبية    much, a lot of للتعبير عن كمية كبيرة

How much

do you need?

B: I need (a little / much)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What \_\_\_\_\_ you do at home yesterday?  
a) do                      b) does                      c) did                      d) doing
- 2 Where did you \_\_\_\_\_ your bag?  
a) found                      b) finding                      c) finds                      d) find
- 3 A: \_\_\_\_\_ she cook lunch yesterday? B: Yes, she did.  
a) Does                      b) Is                      c) Was                      d) Did
- 4 When I was young, I \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris.  
a) travel                      b) traveled                      c) traveling                      d) travels
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ you at school yesterday?  
a) Did                      b) Do                      c) Were                      d) Was
- 6 How \_\_\_\_\_ your last trip?  
a) is                      b) are                      c) was                      d) will
- 7 She \_\_\_\_\_ an amazing experience yesterday.  
a) have                      b) has                      c) having                      d) had
- 8 They \_\_\_\_\_ ready for the competition last week.  
a) wasn't                      b) weren't                      c) isn't                      d) aren't
- 9 Hany didn't \_\_\_\_\_ on the palace tour with the guide.  
a) go                      b) going                      c) gone                      d) went
- 10 Sara \_\_\_\_\_ watch the movie yesterday.  
a) don't                      b) doesn't                      c) isn't                      d) didn't
- 11 How \_\_\_\_\_ cotton ropes does she need to make five candles?  
a) many                      b) much                      c) often                      d) far
- 12 How \_\_\_\_\_ people do you live with?  
a) many                      b) much                      c) often                      d) long
- 13 \_\_\_\_\_ there any sugar in your tea?  
a) Are                      b) Were                      c) Is                      d) Have
- 14 There \_\_\_\_\_ some books in your bag.  
a) are                      b) isn't                      c) wasn't                      d) doesn't
- 15 Laila didn't bring \_\_\_\_\_ popsicle sticks.  
a) an                      b) any                      c) a little                      d) some



- 16 We need oil.  
 a) many b) a few c) a d) a little
- 17 How wax do you need?  
 a) much b) many c) often d) old
- 18 How bottles of water did you have?  
 a) often b) long c) much d) many
- 19 She has garden in her house.  
 a) an b) some c) any d) a
- 20 There isn't oil left in the bottle.  
 a) some b) any c) few d) many

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 Did you (watched) the match yesterday?
- 2 (Were) Ahmed at the club yesterday? B Yes, he was.
- 3 (Were) Ahmed go to the club yesterday? B Yes, he did.
- 4 No, I (did) find my book.
- 5 Jana and Yara (make) pizza for us last night.
- 6 She (be) sick yesterday.
- 7 He (don't) at the club yesterday.
- 8 We (having) a good meal in that restaurant last week.
- 9 Where (did) you yesterday?
- 10 She (play) football last Friday.
- 11 (Who) much sugar do you want?
- 12 There (is) any water in the fridge.
- 13 How (many) milk do you have every day?
- 14 There is (a few) salt in the recipe.
- 15 There are (any) students in your class.
- 16 How (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?
- 17 There aren't (some) oranges on the table.
- 18 How (much) apples do we need for the apple pie?
- 19 There (is) any bread, please, buy some.
- 20 I have (some) apple.

## Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
plant يزرع	planted	use يستخدم	used	produce ينتج	produced
harvest يحصد	harvested	clean ينظف	cleaned	mention يذكر	mentioned
join يضم	joined	collect يجمع	collected	click يقرقر	clicked
offer يعرض	offered	relax يستريح	relaxed	miss يفوت	missed
create يخلق	created	pass يمر / يمرر	passed	share يتشارك	shared
laugh يضحك	laughed	cover يغطي	covered	help يساعد	helped
ask يسأل	asked	need يحتاج	needed	stay يبقى	stayed
contact يتواصل	contacted	borrow يستعير	borrowed	move يتحرك	moved
shout يصرخ	shouted	explore يستكشف	explored	climb يتسلق	climbed
visit يزور	visited	try يجرب	tried	travel يسافر	traveled
love يحب	loved	arrive يصل	arrived	watch يشاهد	watched
decide يقرر	decided	last يدومر	lasted	book يحجز	booked
suggest يقترح	suggested	press يضغط	pressed	heat يسخن	heated
melt يذوب	melted	block يحجب	blocked	study يذاكر	studied
die يموت	died	face يواجه	faced	disappoint يحبط	disappointed
reach يصل	reached	smile يبتسم	smiled	breathe يتنفس	breathed
lift يرفع	lifted	sparkle يلمع	sparkled	stop يتوقف	stopped
decorate يزين	decorated	finish ينهي	finished	tie يربط	tied
cycle يقود دراجة	cycled	organize ينظم	organized	celebrate يحتفل	celebrated
include يشمل	included	sail يبحر	sailed	imagine يتخيل	imagined
agree يوافق	agreed	believe يعتقد	believed	change يتغير	changed
roll يلتف	rolled	sway يتمايل	swayed	seem يبدو	seemed
squeeze بعصر	squeezed	stir يقلب	stirred	depend يعتمد	depended
cook يطهى	cooked	preserve يحفظ	preserved	dry يجفف	dried
notice يلاحظ	noticed	lean يميل	leaned	knock يطرق	knocked
hurry يسرع	hurried	explain يشرح	explained	damage يدمر	damaged
pick يلتقط	picked	mix يخلط	mixed	rub يفرك	rubbed

## Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	sell	بيع	sold
mean	يقصد	meant	think	يعتقد	thought
become	يصبح	became	understand	يفهم	understood
build	يبنى	built	fall	يسقط	fell
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	hear	يسمع	heard
sit	يجلس	sat	feel	يشعر	felt
stand	يقف	stood	meet	يقابل	met
know	يعرف	knew	lie	يرقد	lay
come	يأتي	came	speak	يتكلم	spoke
tell	يحبر	told	put	يضع	put
go	يذهب	went	ride	يركب	rode
take	ياخذ	took	say	يقول	said
run	يجري	ran	drink	يشرب	drank
see	يرى	saw	hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	ينفخ	blew up	send	يرسل	sent
write	يكتب	wrote	let off	يطلق	let off
choose	يختار	chose	spend	يقضي	spent
burn	يحرق	burnt	find	يجد	found
fly	يطير	flew	get to	يصل إلى	got to
has/ have	يملك	had	leave	يعادر	left
hold	يوصلك	held	eat	أكل	ate
cut	يقطع	cut	wear	يرتدي	wore



## Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 I visited Sharm El-Sheikh with my  
a) friends      b) family      c) teachers      d) school
- 2 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy  
a) city      b) country      c) village      d) area
- 3 You can      in the sea there.  
a) read      b) sleep      c) swim      d) relax
- 4 You can go quad      in the desert.  
a) watching      b) sending      c) driving      d) biking



## Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Hani is very      . He shows respect to everyone.  
a) polite      b) messy      c) lazy      d) organized
- 2 The mosque has a very high  
a) market      b) mountain      c) minaret      d) museum
- 3 There are a lot of      in the desert.  
a) oceans      b) sand dunes      c) rivers      d) seas
- 4 To get organic food, we use natural  
a) tools      b) gardens      c) chemicals      d) fertilizers

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

friendly – walk – independent – fur – pet

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft (1) which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually (2) . They like people but they are (3) . We don't need to take them for a (4) every day.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Last week, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Ali was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Ali was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat has two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about  
a) a strong man                      b) an amazing experience  
c) the River Nile                      d) the warm weather
- 2 The felucca is made of .....  
a) metal                      b) wool                      c) wood                      d) leather
- 3 The opposite of the underlined word "quiet" is  
a) noisy                      b) traditional                      c) lovely                      d) difficult

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What is a felucca?
- 5 How was the trip?



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 never – They – late – are – school – for.
- 2 Nadine – and – My friend – is – kind – friendly.
- 3 go – the – Let's – to – park – theme.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 Noura always ..... (eat) healthy food.
- 2 Ahmed ..... (go) on a vacation last month.

**Punctuate the following:**

1

we need some perfume oil to make candles

**Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"My birthday party"

blow up balloons – make a playlist



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 In the west court, there is a water  
a) computer      b) fountain      c) teacher      d) student
- 2 The IT building is the building where you can find our classrooms.  
a) TV      b) radio      c) computer      d) mobile
- 3 Mr Mahdi is the      who helps in the garden.  
a) doctor      b) engineer      c) nurse      d) teacher
- 4 Children can also grow      with Mr Mahdi.  
a) plants      b) trees      c) benches      d) flowers



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 At school, we must have our      with us.  
a) text books      b) magazines      c) stories      d) cell phones
- 2 A crocodile swims in a  
a) mountain      b) sky      c) lake      d) cave
- 3 Can you      up the balloons?  
a) cut      b) blow      c) send      d) write
- 4 Our apartment is on the sixteenth  
a) flour      b) flower      c) ground      d) floor

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

selfish – around – birds – happy – village

In a village, there is a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden, there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful (1)      singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children (2)      , but the (3)      giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall (4)      it.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

Mahmoud had a hard week. When he left school, it was raining heavily. His clothes got wet, and his hair was wet, too. He couldn't hide all the way home. When he arrived home, he felt cold. His mother gave him aspirin and hot drinks and advised him to stay in bed. As his mother was a doctor, she told him that taking medicine once would be good for him. He listened to his mother and followed her advice. He got better within two days.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 "Aspirin" is a kind of .  
a) drink                      b) food                      c) juice                      d) medicine
- 2 Mahmoud's mother was a/an .  
a) doctor                      b) teacher                      c) nurse                      d) engineer
- 3 Mahmoud was ill for two .  
a) weeks                      b) hours                      c) days                      d) years

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What was the weather like?
- 5 What did Mahmoud's mother advise him to do?



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 school – at – I – friends – have – a lot of.
- 2 our – excited – I'm – vacation – about.
- 3 a lot of – My – vegetables – garden – produces.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 Let's                      (visited) the museum.
- 2 Look! He . . . . . (play) tennis.

**Punctuate the following:**

1

"how are you?" She asked

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"Food in Ancient Egypt"

vegetables and fruits – spices and herbs





## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 Belal and Amr are . . . . .  
a) friends      b) nurses      c) vets      d) teachers
- 2 They're going quad biking in the . . . . .  
a) forest      b) desert      c) river      d) hall
- 3 The theme park is in . . . . .  
a) Cairo      b) Tanta      c) Giza      d) Alexandria
- 4 They want to ride on a . . . . .  
a) donkey      b) bike      c) horse      d) rollercoaster



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 A . . . . . is a group of camels and people traveling together.  
a) palace      b) selfish      c) valley      d) caravan
- 2 We use . . . . . to cut paper.  
a) pens      b) streamers      c) scissors      d) candles
- 3 I can do . . . . . in the laboratory.  
a) sports      b) experiments      c) food      d) washing
- 4 The railway line is a road for . . . . .  
a) trains      b) cars      c) boats      d) buses

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

park – hang – balloons – friends – cake

I celebrate my birthday every year. My mother makes me a (1) . . . . . I invite my  
(2) . . . . . to attend the party. My brother helps me (3) . . . . . up the streamers.  
My sister blows up some (4) . . . . . We all have fun.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

I am Mohamed. I live with my family. On holidays, I help my family at our community garden. It is on the roof of our apartment block. We grow our food and it is organic, which means we never use chemicals. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and lettuce. We also plant fruit like lemons and dates. It is a good idea to grow your own food.





**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- The general idea of the text is about a  
a) club  
b) school  
c) sport  
d) community garden
- The underlined word "grow" means  
a) plant  
b) swim  
c) play  
d) read
- They grow tomatoes, lemons, and  
a) potatoes  
b) lettuce  
c) onions  
d) cucumbers

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What does Mohamed do on holidays?
- 5 Where is the community garden?



## Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 make – She – a playlist – going to – is.
- 2 do – need – you – How – much – wax?
- 3 study – when – are – you – hungry – Don't.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 We never go to school (at) Friday.  
2 Would you like (any) cake?

### Punctuate the following:

1

he is excited about the vacation

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

## "Cats"

eat – independent



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 The text is about  
a) birds                      b) cats                      c) fish                      d) mice
- 2 Cats have                      fur.  
a) soft                      b) hard                      c) sharp                      d) ugly
- 3 Cats make you  
a) angry                      b) happy                      c) hungry                      d) thirsty
- 4 Cats are  
a) worried                      b) nervous                      c) dangerous                      d) friendly



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 The elephant is the                      land animal.  
a) smallest                      b) thinnest                      c) biggest                      d) shortest
- 2 There's someone here, I can hear his  
a) voice                      b) clothes                      c) books                      d) face
- 3 We usually                      tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.  
a) plant                      b) make                      c) play                      d) read
- 4 Peter put the                      on the king's head.  
a) throne                      b) crown                      c) palace                      d) statue

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

enjoy – apartment – out – areas – railway

I'm Sara, I moved to New York with my family. Our new (1) is on the tenth floor. There are lots of green (2) here. My favorite green space is the High Line. It was a (3) line. People here decided to make it into a big, long park that everyone could hang (4) with friends.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

My name is Yasmine. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at break. I helped a new student yesterday. Her name is Amira. She was nervous and shy. I shared my book with her. Next Friday, we will go to Giza together and visit the Pyramids there. I love helping my friends.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about  
a) helping new students                      b) teachers at school  
c) doing experiment                          d) playing football
- 2 Yasmine is  
a) strong                      b) frightened                      c) messy                      d) helpful
- 3 Amira was shy and  
a) happy                      b) nervous                      c) organized                      d) strong

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What did Yasmine share with Amira?
- 5 Where will they go next Friday?



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

1 visit – Luxor – We – will – summer – next.

2 you – do – How often – football – play?

3 is – famous – Egypt – its – Pyramids – for.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

1 He (go) shopping every month.

2 The book was really (interested).

**Punctuate the following:**

1

amani lives in Tanta

**Write a diary of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

“A place you like to visit”

Why do you like it? – Where is it?



## Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Akram is . . . . . years old.  
a) 10                      b) 20                      c) 14                      d) 12
- 2 He lives with his . . . . .  
a) friends                      b) family                      c) neighbors                      d) doctors
- 3 They grow vegetables like . . . . .  
a) dates                      b) lettuce                      c) mangoes                      d) apples
- 4 The word "grow" has the same meaning as . . . . .  
a) draw                      b) cut                      c) plant                      d) need



## Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 He isn't very calm. He's very . . . . .  
a) polite                      b) clever                      c) nervous                      d) organized
- 2 The community garden helps to clean the . . . . .  
a) air                      b) room                      c) village                      d) school
- 3 Marco Polo was an Italian . . . . .  
a) baker                      b) explorer                      c) teacher                      d) farmer
- 4 My mother . . . . . up the balloons.  
a) put                      b) did                      c) celebrated                      d) blew

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

make – oil – candle – wax – great

Leila's mother wanted to do something new. She had a (1) idea. She wanted to (2) candles. She asked her daughter to help her. Leila read the instructions and she prepared the ingredients for her mother; 500 grams of wax, 45 drops of perfume (3) for three candles and one glass, and one wick for each (4).

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Welcome to our school, a place which we are proud of and we are happy to show it to you. There are three buildings in our school, there are 20 classrooms, and there are two new laboratories where we study science. Inside these laboratories, we can find all the equipment which classes need to do experiments. Also, there is a large open area where we spend time outside. There is a large playground where we can play football, tennis, basketball, or run, or do exercises. We have in our school



a beautiful garden where there are benches to sit on under the trees. We can also grow some plants in the garden.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 We are very \_\_\_\_\_ of our school.  
a) shy                      b) sad                      c) meet                      d) proud
- 2 There are two \_\_\_\_\_ at our school.  
a) laboratories          b) benches                      c) classes                      d) students
- 3 The benches are \_\_\_\_\_ the trees.  
a) on                      b) under                      c) next to                      d) behind

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 How many buildings are there in the school?
- 5 What are the activities that you can do in your school?



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 last – didn't – the – win – We – week – match.
- 2 weather – What – the – Cairo – is – like – in?
- 3 mom – cake – My – sister – a nice – for – made – my.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ (be) they spending their vacation?
- 2 This flower smells \_\_\_\_\_ (love).

**Punctuate the following:**

1

don't forget to invite your friend noha.

**Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"An amazing trip to Sharm El-Sheikh"  
enjoy swimming – quad biking



## Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Marco Polo was from . . . . .  
a) Spain                      b) England                      c) China                      d) Italy
- 2 Marco Polo was . . . . .  
a) an explorer              b) a farmer                      c) a teacher                      d) a doctor
- 3 Marco Polo went to China . . . . .  
a) by train                      b) by ship                      c) on a camel                      d) on a horse
- 4 Marco Polo wrote a . . . . . about his travels.  
a) novel                      b) diary                      c) blog                      d) story



## Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Farmers . . . . . their crops on farms.  
a) ride                      b) harvest                      c) swim                      d) melt
- 2 Rana is a . . . . . girl. She does not like to talk to people.  
a) shy                      b) kind                      c) friendly                      d) clever
- 3 Pots are made of . . . . .  
a) paper                      b) water                      c) clay                      d) milk
- 4 Put some . . . . . on the toothbrush to brush your teeth.  
a) ice cream                      b) perfume                      c) candles                      d) toothpaste

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

local – community – volunteers – chemicals – roof

I live on the tenth floor of an apartment block, so we have a nice view of the Nile. In our (1) , there are a lot of projects to have parks and green places. We have a (2) garden on the building and a mini forest where we grow plants and trees. My friends and I are (3) who help people grow trees and plants every Friday. We are excited to make our (4) community a clean and nice place.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Hany. I am twelve years old. I am a pupil in primary six. I go to Al-Zahraa Primary School. It is not far from my house, so I walk and it takes only five minutes to get there. We study a lot of subjects at school. My favorite subject is science because I learn new things about air, water, animals, and metals. Mrs Azza is my science teacher. She is very kind and helpful. She helps me and my



friends to do experiments in the science laboratory. We like her lesson very much. Also, I like my school library, so I go there at break to read stories and books.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Hany goes to school  
a) by bus                      b) on foot                      c) by tuk-tuk                      d) by train
- 2 Hany's favorite subject is  
a) math                      b) Arabic                      c) English                      d) science
- 3 The underlined word "kind" means  
a) bad                      b) boring                      c) friendly                      d) unkind

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What does Hany do at break?
- 5 Why do you think Hany and his friends like Mrs Azza?



### Writing



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 never – games – You – video – with me – play.
- 2 pets – are – fur – beautiful – Cats – with soft.
- 3 else – what – Great, – we – do – can?



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 My father                      (watch) the match now.
- 2 It is a very                      (bored) film.



**Punctuate the following:**

1

dina walks to school every day



**Write an e-mail to your friend Kamal of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"Mother's Day Celebration in my school"

Your name is Omar and your e-mail address is (omar@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (kamal@gmail.com).

invite – special day



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 Cats make the best  
a) birds                      b) bees                      c) pets                      d) plants
- 2 Cats are nice to  
a) eat                      b) feed                      c) touch                      d) buy
- 3 It's true that cats have sharp  
a) ears                      b) eyes                      c) nose                      d) claws
- 4 Cats are                      for your well-being.  
a) quick                      b) good                      c) bad                      d) unhealthy



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 All the students are                      of our school.  
a) kind                      b) lazy                      c) proud                      d) crazy
- 2 The road for trains is called a  
a) stop                      b) station                      c) railway line                      d) center
- 3 We use                      language when we speak to strangers.  
a) informal                      b) formal                      c) bad                      d) tough
- 4 The                      of the mosque is 20 meters high.  
a) museum                      b) hall                      c) minaret                      d) wall

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

language – candles – birthday – families – presents

What do we do for a birthday celebration in Egypt? We usually make (1) cakes for our children. We put (2) on them to show their age. We have parties with our (3) and friends. The children usually receive (4).

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. Every afternoon, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy but the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden so one day, he builds a big wall around it. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. The snow covers the garden and all the little birds and bees fly away.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The giant lives in a  
a) city                      b) town                      c) village                      d) hot
- 2 The lovely garden always makes the children  
a) busy                      b) bored                      c) happy                      d) sad
- 3 The giant is  
a) kind                      b) friendly                      c) smart                      d) selfish

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 Why do children like the giant's garden?
- 5 What is the garden like now?



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 go – you – Where – did – on – vacation?
- 2 didn't – ship – The – leave – port – the.
- 3 I – with – to – Hurghada – my family – went.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 There aren't ... .. (some) tigers in Egypt.
- 2 They ... .. (buy) a new house a year ago.

**Punctuate the following:**

1

can you tell me the recipe to make salt dough

**Write an e-mail to your friend Emad of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

**"How to keep our environment"**

Your name is Alaa and your e-mail address is (allaa35@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (emadzaher@gmail.com).

grow – volunteers





## Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Mrs. Asmaa is a teacher of  
a) Arabic      b) science      c) math      d) English
- 2 She has      children.  
a) one      b) two      c) three      d) four
- 3 She went on a vacation last  
a) summer      b) winter      c) spring      d) fall
- 4 She went to      and visited the Pyramids.  
a) Cairo      b) Alexandria      c) Giza      d) Zagazig



## Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Put the ingredients for your soap in the  
a) ball      b) bowl      c) car      d) book
- 2 I went on a      on the River Nile.  
a) bike      b) felucca      c) plane      d) bus
- 3 My brother is twenty years old. He is a/an  
a) baby      b) old      c) adult      d) child
- 4 We watch shows in the  
a) bakery      b) theater      c) restaurant      d) bank

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

parties – cakes – honey – candles – presents

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday (1) for our children. We put (2) on them to show their age. We often have (3) with a lot of family and friends. The children get (4), too.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Yesterday, I went to Alexandria with my family. We went there by train. We looked out of the window. The best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend, Mr Nabil and his family. We played on the beach. In the afternoon, we went to the Alexandria Library to read some books. In the evening, we had a nice meal in the restaurant. We had fish. The food was very delicious.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The underlined word "there" refers to  
a) Cairo                      b) Aswan                      c) Giza                      d) Alexandria
- 2 They had                      in the evening.  
a) dinner                      b) breakfast                      c) lunch                      d) snacks
- 3 They went to a                      to have their meal.  
a) library                      b) school                      c) restaurant                      d) bank

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What did they do in the afternoon?
- 5 Summarize the passage in two sentences.



### Writing

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 always – Reda – ready – is – exams – for.
- 2 melts – it – ice, – heat – you – If.
- 3 Fridays – do – What – you – do – on?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 This is the street                      (which) we live.
- 2 Nabil                      (drink) milk every morning.

**Punctuate the following:**

1

they are playing football now

**Write a diary of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"A visit to the Pyramids"

friends – tourists



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 Adel visits his grandparents in . . . . .  
a) October      b) June      c) May      d) July
- 2 Adel goes . . . . . with his grandpa.  
a) swimming      b) running      c) fishing      d) walking
- 3 Adel plays football with his . . . . . in the evenings.  
a) friends      b) father      c) brothers      d) parents
- 4 Adel sometimes helps his . . . . . in the kitchen.  
a) father      b) sister      c) friends      d) grandma



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 I live in a/an . . . . . in the city with my family.  
a) tent      b) apartment block      c) cave      d) factory
- 2 Sara is always . . . . . , she is worried about talking to a lot of people.  
a) shy      b) friendly      c) clever      d) messy
- 3 Do you like eating . . . . . ?  
a) volcanoes      b) villages      c) vegetables      d) vans
- 4 I couldn't . . . . . up balloons when I was young.  
a) let      b) give      c) send      d) blow

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

independent – claws – fur – scared – walk

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft (1) . . . . . which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and calm animals. They are usually friendly. Cats like people but they are (2) . . . . . Cats have sharp (3) . . . . . and teeth, but they only use them when they are (4) . . . . . Cats are good for your well-being.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate very well. Ancient Egyptians cooked with vegetables like onions, garlic, lentils, and beans. They also used wheat and barley to make bread, and they ate a lot of this every day. They also ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They ate a few fish and birds, like ducks, geese, and chickens. They used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks too. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and very well.  
a) ate                      b) played                      c) cooked                      d) drank
- 2 They used                      and barley to make bread.  
a) figs                      b) dates                      c) wheat                      d) milk
- 3 They used                      with cream to make cakes.  
a) garlic                      b) honey                      c) barely                      d) figs

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 How much meat did Ancient Egyptians eat?
- 5 What did they use figs and dates for?



**Writing**

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 neighbors – Our – and – are – friendly – helpful.
- 2 your – What's – pet – favorite?
- 3 isn't – Marwa – to – coming – tomorrow – party – the.

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 They . . . (is) coming from school now.
- 2 I don't . . . (visiting) my friends on Fridays.

**Punctuate the following:**

1

how many people are coming

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

“My school”

classrooms – playground



## Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 We are having a \_\_\_\_\_ party for my little sister Nour.  
a) wedding      b) Mother's Day      c) birthday      d) carnival
- 2 My mom and my aunt are \_\_\_\_\_ the cake.  
a) eating      b) decorating      c) baking      d) preparing
- 3 Soha is sending email \_\_\_\_\_ to our friends.  
a) invitations      b) cards      c) letters      d) parents
- 4 I'm making the \_\_\_\_\_ on my phone.  
a) music      b) songs      c) films      d) playlist



## Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I live in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of eleven floors.  
a) roof      b) apartment block      c) house      d) villa
- 2 The king has a \_\_\_\_\_ on his head.  
a) crown      b) hat      c) star      d) scepter
- 3 They need an adult to let off the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) playlist      b) balloons      c) fireworks      d) streamers
- 4 We don't use \_\_\_\_\_ when we grow organic food.  
a) water      b) chemicals      c) sunlight      d) seeds

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

boring – fish – beautiful – museum – souks

Ahmed will spend his summer vacation with his friends in Port Said. It is a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ place. They want to visit the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ where they can see historical objects. Then they will explore the modern (3) \_\_\_\_\_ where they can have lunch. Some of them will have (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and crabs. The others will have pizza. Finally, they will go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster.

Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Anne is my friend. She is from England. She is fascinated by traveling. She comes to visit Egypt every year. She usually comes to Egypt because the weather is really fantastic. She stays in a big hotel in Cairo. She visits some wonderful places, such as the Egyptian Museum in Cairo and the zoo in Giza. She enjoys watching the animals there. She also goes to Alexandria to see its big library. Finally, she visits the temples at Luxor and takes photographs of our great monuments. She always says that Egypt is a great country and a wonderful place for tourists to visit.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Anne is from  
a) England                      b) Giza                      c) Alexandria                      d) Cairo
- 2 Anne stays in a ... when she comes to Egypt.  
a) museum                      b) apartment                      c) hotel                      d) tent
- 3 Anne visits the ... at Luxor.  
a) Pyramids                      b) restaurants                      c) temples                      d) schools

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 Why does Anne go to Alexandria?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



### Writing

3

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

- 1 do – laboratories – in – We – experiments – the.
- 2 some – traditional – Students – sing – will – songs.
- 3 is – The Great – high – Pyramid – 147 – meters.

2

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 If you heat sugar, it ... (melt).
- 2 How ... (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?

1

**Punctuate the following:**

she didn't travel to cairo.

5

**Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

“The community garden”

- Where is the community garden?
- What do you grow there?



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 Ola has a pet .  
a) cat                      b) dog                      c) fox                      d) camel
- 2 Cats are                      and calm animals.  
a) nervous                      b) noisy                      c) clean                      d) bad
- 3 Cats have soft .  
a) teeth                      b) fur                      c) claws                      d) paws
- 4 When I pet my cat, it makes me feel .  
a) happy                      b) angry                      c) shy                      d) sad



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 I live in a/an                      on the sixth floor.  
a) apartment                      b) villa                      c) tent                      d) boat
- 2 A                      person is nice and kind to others.  
a) nervous                      b) messy                      c) friendly                      d) scared
- 3 We went quad                      in the desert yesterday.  
a) running                      b) biking                      c) climbing                      d) reading
- 4 Marco Polo was an Italian .  
a) doctor                      b) artist                      c) teacher                      d) explorer

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

market – volunteers – roof – trees – vegetables

The community garden is a big green space. It is on the (1)                      of an apartment block. The people who work there are all (2)                      . They are from the neighborhood. They grow (3)                      to eat . Sometimes, they sell them in the (4)                      , too.

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

Ancient Egyptians used personal care products. Many of the products we use today were first used in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians loved to use strong perfumes. The most popular and expensive perfume was called "Kaper". Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers and herbs. The Ancient Egyptians used toothpaste to clean their teeth. They used a toothbrush made of a stick with a small piece of papyrus tied to it at one end. Ancient Egyptians also liked to keep their mouths fresh all day. They made mint candies.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The general idea of the text is about \_\_\_\_\_ in Ancient Egypt.  
a) festivals                      b) perfumes                      c) boats                      d) plants
- 2 The underlined word “expensive” means \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) difficult                      b) precious                      c) common                      d) cheap
- 3 Cheaper perfumes were made from \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) flour                      b) wood                      c) flowers                      d) sand

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 What did they use to make toothbrushes?
- 5 Why did Ancient Egyptians make mint candy?



**Writing**



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 Amira - very - nice - is - helpful - and.
- 2 birthday - is - Mom - cake - decorating - the.
- 3 the - cycling - I - on - go - weekend.



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 They \_\_\_\_\_ (play often) tennis.
- 2 If we \_\_\_\_\_ (feeling) sick, we go to the doctor.



**Punctuate the following:**

1

the Ancient egyptians loved perfumes.



**Write a text message of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

“Spending my free time”

go running - meet my friends



## Listening

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

6

- 1 We read and borrow books from the  
a) library      b) school      c) shop      d) bank
- 2 We go to the library      a week.  
a) once      b) twice      c) 3 times      d) 4 times
- 3 The      helps us to read and borrow the books.  
a) doctor      b) vet      c) teacher      d) nurse
- 4 The library is a      and calm place to read.  
a) ugly      b) quiet      c) unusual      d) dangerous



## Reading

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4

- 1 We prefer      food with no chemicals.  
a) organic      b) dirty      c) polluted      d) bad
- 2 Hani is      up some balloons.  
a) giving      b) blowing      c) decoration      d) sending
- 3 Cats are my best  
a) fruit      b) pets      c) plants      d) vegetables
- 4 Omar is a good boy. He is really  
a) messy      b) organized      c) noisy      d) careless

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

4

herbs – ingredients – cinnamon – popular – messy

Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. There was a very (1)      perfume called Kapet. It was very expensive, too. It was expensive because it had a lot of (2)      , and they were difficult to find. There were also a few common (3)      in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and (4)      .

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

5

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft hair which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals. They are usually friendly. They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. They have sharp claws and teeth, but they use them only when they are scared. Cats are good for your well-being.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 They have . . . . . fur. You can touch it.  
a) hard                      b) thick                      c) soft                      d) steel
- 2 The underlined word "them" refers to . . . . .  
a) cats                      b) dogs                      c) horses                      d) mice
- 3 Cats are . . . . . for your well-being.  
a) good                      b) bad                      c) strong                      d) weak

**Answer the following questions:**

- 4 Why don't you need to take cats for a walk every day?
- 5 When do cats use their sharp claws?



**Writing**

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

3

- 1 from – every – forest – data – We – collect.
- 2 really – interested – Egypt – I'm – in – Ancient.
- 3 celebrate – can – How – they – birthdays?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

2

- 1 What are you . . . . . (do) now?
- 2 How . . . . . (much) apples do you eat?

**Punctuate the following:**

1

where do you live, Ali

**Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

5

"A visit to Cairo"

What places did you visit? – How did you enjoy?



## A. Language Functions



**Read and complete the dialogue:**

10

cotton — start — candles — need — instructions

Ahmed : What are you doing, Samir?

Samir : I'm making (1) .

Ahmed : I can help. What are the . . . (2) . . . ?

Samir : First, we . . . (3) . . . wax and wicks.

Ahmed : What is the wick?

Samir : It's the little . . . (4) . . . rope inside the candle.

Ahmed : Let's . . . (5) . . .



## B. Vocabulary and Structures



**Read and circle the odd one out:**

10

- 1 streamers — candle — bed — present
- 2 tall — selfish — string — giant
- 3 cut — museum — minaret — souk
- 4 run — organize — sleep — sick
- 5 jacket — purple — shirt — dress



**Choose the correct answer:**

10

- 1 I live in a/an (cave — tent — apartment block — factory) in the city with my family.
- 2 Adel had an amazing (experience — experiment — civilization — culture) in the felucca trip.
- 3 (Drink — Squeeze — Bake — Eat) in about 40 drops of perfume oil.
- 4 You need a/an (crea t card — ticket — theater — cake) to go on the waterfall ride.
- 5 No one comes to wash the (candy — dust — water — air) off the painting.
- 6 Last Tuesday, they (was — are — were — d d) in Aswan. They visited many places.
- 7 He (never — rarely — don't — a ways) comes to school early. He doesn't come late.
- 8 My friend (don't — isn't — dian't — doesn't) meet me for dinner yesterday evening.
- 9 How (often — many — much — often) eggs does she have for breakfast?
- 10 Adel was born (in — on — at — of) 2003.





## C. Reading Comprehension



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

10

I am always fascinated by Egyptian food, especially the different spices used. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. I find it interesting that spices have other uses besides cooking. We also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. It's no surprise that tourists buy fresh and beautifully packaged spices as souvenirs when they are in Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used spices thousands of years ago.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What are the uses of spices?
- 2 What do tourists buy as souvenirs?
- 3 When did Ancient Egyptians use spices?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 The writer likes the Egyptian  
 a) pyramids                      b) food                      c) medicine                      d) clothes
- 5 Special combinations of different  
 a) souks                      b) cloth                      c) spices                      d) perfumes



## (D) Writing



**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

10

- 1 a wonderful – has – The – garden – giant.
- 2 want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?
- 3 the dentist – you – go – do – How often – to?
- 4 Egyptians – loved – Ancient – strong – perfumes.
- 5 inside – house – Hare – her – a noise – hears.



**Write an e-mail to your friend Shady of about FIVE sentences using the following guiding elements:**

10

“Birthday parties”

Your name is Hazem and your e-mail address is (hazem@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (shady@gmail.com).

cake – present – invitations – balloons – sing



## (A) Language Functions

**Read and complete the dialogue:**

10

drive – meet – information – tour – show

Sara : Dad, I found some (1) about quad biking in the desert.

Dad : Wow! (2) me.

Sara : The (3) guide will meet us at the hotel.

Dad : What time will he (4) us?

Sara : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll (5) us into the desert.



## (B) Vocabulary and Structures

**Read and circle the odd one out:**

10

- 1 borrow – take – polite – stay
- 2 laboratory – honey – school – theater
- 3 white – which – who – where
- 4 children – noodles – peaches – chicken
- 5 selfish – news – famous – giant

**Choose the correct answer:**

10

- 1 Hani is very (polite – messy – lazy – organized). He shows respect to everyone.
- 2 The king and the queen wear (shoes – scepters – thrones – crowns) on their heads.
- 3 We visit Cairo every year to (do – send – ride – explore) the souks.
- 4 The mosque has a very high (minaret – mountain – market – cup).
- 5 I can do (sports – experiments – washing – experience) in the laboratory.
- 6 If it gets hotter, ice (melt – melted – melts – melting).
- 7 When (did – does – is – do) your dad come home last night?
- 8 What (was – were – are – is) Nada and her friends doing yesterday?
- 9 I (sometimes – usually – never – always) watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.
- 10 We (doesn't – don't – aren't – isn't) water the plants in the morning.



## (C) Reading Comprehension

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

10

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These green spaces help people enjoy nature and wildlife. They never grow

foreign plants in their projects. Also, they work with local communities to look after the forests. They collect data regularly to understand the effects of these green spaces on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area. I would be excited to be a volunteer at Mini Forest and help our earth get better!

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What is Mini Forest?
- 2 How do green spaces help?
- 3 Why do they work with local communities?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 . . . . . plants trees in the middle of our cities.  
a) City                      b) Mini Forest                      c) Climate                      d) Wildlife
- 5 They never use . . . . . plants in their projects.  
a) strange                      b) foreign                      c) unusual                      d) native



**(D) Writing**

**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

10

- 1 coming – people – How – are – many?
- 2 family – went – I – to – with – my – Hurghada.
- 3 she – Is – birthday – the – decorating – cake?
- 4 If – go – train, – quicker – is – it – we – by.
- 5 does – homework – Dina – her – weekend – on – the.

**Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements:**

10

“Making candles”

wax – heat – wick – popsicle – perfume oil



## (A) Language Functions



**Read and complete the dialogue:**

10

ingredients – herbs – called – expensive – perfumes

Omar : Do you know that the Ancient Egyptians loved strong (1) ?

Maro : Yes. The most popular perfume was (2) . *Kapt*.

Omar : I read that it was (3) . Why?

Maro : Because it had a lot of (4) . Some of which were difficult to find.

Omar : It also had some (5) like mint.



## (B) Vocabulary and Structures



**Read and circle the odd one out:**

10

- 1 pepper – honey – lettuce – onions
- 2 shampoo – soap – toothpaste – cup
- 3 large – bowl – ancient – little
- 4 heat – stir – sleep – squeeze
- 5 met – want – went – stuck



**Choose the correct answer:**

10

- 1 Mini Forest (city – school – organization – area) needs more people to join and help.
- 2 We give cake to all the (meats – guests – presents – noodles) at the party.
- 3 Pots are made of (paper – water – clay – milk).
- 4 Can you (cut – blow – send – ride) up the balloons?
- 5 To get organic food, we use natural (tools – chemicals – fertilizers – gardens).
- 6 They (don't – doesn't – d an't – weren't) travel by sea. They took the train.
- 7 (Is – Are – Does – Did) your friend walking to school now?
- 8 I (doesn't – never – always – rarely) speak English during my English lessons.
- 9 How often do you (sleep – sleeping – sleeps – slept) early?
- 10 The elephant is the (big – bigger – biggest – thin) land animal.



## (C) Reading Comprehension



**Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

10

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the



captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful way to travel.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What is the felucca?
- 2 Who is the captain of the boat?
- 3 How was the trip?

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4 The felucca is made of .  
a) metal                      b) wool                      c) wood                      d) leather
- 5 Kareem was very .  
a) strong                      b) funny                      c) boring                      d) noisy



**(D) Writing**



**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

10

- 1 never – Ali – late – is – for – school.
- 2 often – does – Sara – How – you – visit?
- 3 Marco Polo – explorer – was – Italian – an.
- 4 proud – of – our – We – are – school.
- 5 in – apartment – lives – an – He – block.



**Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements:**

10

“My pet”

independent – clean – fur – scared – claws



## (A) Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- 1 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a tall building that contains flats.  
a) garden      b) apartment block      c) roof      d) farm
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ food is good for your health.  
a) Organic      b) Chemical      c) Local      d) Unhealthy
- 3 Omar is \_\_\_\_\_. He's nice to others and helpful.  
a) kind      b) nervous      c) shy      d) clever
- 4 Scientists can travel to other planets in a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) spaceship      b) ship      c) boat      d) felucca
- 5 Elephants are afraid of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) cats      b) mice      c) sheep      d) rabbits
- 6 If I forget my book at home, I can \_\_\_\_\_ my friend's book.  
a) sure      b) share      c) eat      d) help
- 7 Ola is visiting Paris \_\_\_\_\_ the winter.  
a) on      b) in      c) at      d) by
- 8 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.  
a) bus      b) car      c) train      d) felucca
- 9 Omar \_\_\_\_\_ interested in the game when I asked him to play.  
a) isn't      b) don't      c) wasn't      d) didn't
- 10 Nada needs \_\_\_\_\_ sugar to finish the cake.  
a) many      b) a few      c) much      d) two

Choose the odd word:

5

- 1 says — plays — goes — read
- 2 onions — lentils — honey — beans
- 3 peaceful — beautifully — gently — slowly
- 4 candle — flame — flour — fire
- 5 no — always — sometimes — often



## (B) Reading

Read the text and answer the questions:

8

I'm Ali. I love my school very much. My school is next to my house. I go to school on foot. I go to school by myself. I go to school at seven o'clock. I study English,

Arabic, math, science, and art. My favorite subject is English. I want to be a doctor when I grow up. My school is clean and nice. I go home at two o'clock.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The text is a/an .  
 a) passage      b) email      c) letter      d) form (استمارة)
- 2 Ali is a/an .  
 a) doctor      b) teacher      c) student      d) chef
- 3 Ali goes to school .  
 a) by bus      b) by car      c) by bike      d) on foot
- 4 Ali's favorite subject is .  
 a) math      b) English      c) science      d) art



### (C) Writing

**Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:**

6

- 1 look – plants – We – after – need to – our.  
 a) We need to after look our plants.  
 b) We to after look need our plants.  
 c) We need to look after our plants.
- 2 went – the – last – Hala – cinema – to – week.  
 a) Hala went to the cinema last week.  
 b) Hala went to last the cinema week.  
 c) Hala went the cinema to last week.

**Reorder the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:**

8

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| a) She went to hospital.               | 1- (    ) |
| b) The doctor gave her medicine there. | 2- (    ) |
| c) My sister was sick.                 | 3- (    ) |
| d) She is doing better today.          | 4- (    ) |

**Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b or c:**

3

egypt is in africa

- a) Egypt is in africa.
- b) egypt is in Africa
- c) Egypt is in Africa.



## (A) Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

- 1 At the community garden, people \_\_\_\_\_ about twenty kilos of vegetables a year.  
a) buy                      b) harvest                      c) eat                      d) work
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ play football in the street. It's dangerous.  
a) always                      b) usually                      c) never                      d) sometimes
- 3 We do science \_\_\_\_\_ at the laboratories.  
a) tablets                      b) experiments                      c) games                      d) sports
- 4 Ahmed was the boy \_\_\_\_\_ helped me with my homework.  
a) when                      b) where                      c) which                      d) who
- 5 We can ride on a roller coaster in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) palace                      b) museum                      c) theme park                      d) desert
- 6 I go to school early \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) of
- 7 I sent the \_\_\_\_\_ for my party.  
a) balloons                      b) streamers                      c) invitations                      d) fireworks
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ you studying for your exams now?  
a) Are                      b) Is                      c) Was                      d) Were
- 9 I went on a \_\_\_\_\_ with my family in the sea.  
a) train                      b) voyage                      c) trip                      d) camel
- 10 Reem \_\_\_\_\_ Croatia with her family a few years ago.  
a) visit                      b) visits                      c) visiting                      d) visited

Choose the odd word:

5

- 1 delicious — large — bowl — ancient
- 2 played — look — watched — helped
- 3 afternoon — morning — evening — blowing
- 4 run — giant — hungry — scared
- 5 fruit — garden — tomato — pepper



## (B) Reading

Read the text and answer the questions:

8

The zoo is the best place to visit at the weekend. It's a safe place where many kinds of animals and birds live. The people who work there take care of the animals and the birds; they give them food and drink. One visit to the zoo makes you love wildlife. Children love going to the zoo because it's a place to play and have fun. It's also a place where people can see some kinds of animals that they can't see at any other place.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The zoo is a \_\_\_\_\_ place to visit.  
a) safe                      b) slow                      c) scared                      d) noisy
- 2 Many kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ live in the zoo.  
a) children                      b) doctors                      c) animals                      d) tourists
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ love going to the zoo to play and have fun.  
a) Animals                      b) Birds                      c) Children                      d) Teachers
- 4 The underlined word "they" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) animals                      b) people                      c) birds                      d) children



### (C) Writing

**Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:**

6

- 1 books – have – Do – your – all – you?  
a) Do all your have you books?  
b) your have Do all books your?  
c) Do you have all your books?
- 2 little – oil – These – bottles – lemon – are – of.  
a) These are little bottles of lemon oil.  
b) bottles lemon are These of oil little.  
c) bottles oil little are of These lemon.

**Reorder the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:**

8

- a) Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. 1- (    )
- b) "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!" 2- (    )
- c) Little Deer runs through the forest. 3- (    )
- d) He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. 4- (    )

**Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b, or c:**

3

ancient egyptians ate a lot of vegetables

- a) ancient Egyptians ate a lot of Vegetables.
- b) ancient Egyptians ate a Lot of Vegetables
- c) Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables.

# Taposcripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

## UNIT 1

### Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Ola. I like to help my father with our roof garden. We have a garden on our roof. We grow vegetables like onions, tomatoes, and peppers. We also grow fruits like lemons and dates. We use natural fertilizer, so our food is fresh and organic.

### Practice on Lesson 3

There was a selfish giant who didn't want to share his big garden with the children. He built a wall around his garden. Spring arrived, but in the giant's garden, it was still winter. When the children came back, the leaves on the trees were green again. The giant understood that when you're not selfish, good things happen.

### Test Yourself on Unit 1

My name is Lara. I always wake up at six o'clock. I usually arrive at school before eight o'clock. I sometimes eat a sandwich at nine o'clock. I always go home at three o'clock. I rarely watch TV after school. I usually do my homework at five o'clock. I am always in bed before nine o'clock.

## UNIT 2

### Practice on Lesson 1

Mazen moved to a new school last year. He was very nervous and shy because he didn't know anyone. He met his new friend Malek. Malek took Mazen around and showed him where the classrooms were. Mazen also met Ali, who was very clever. Ali helped Mazen with the math homework.

### Practice on Lesson 3

I love reading stories. My favorite story is "Hare gets scared". Hare is hungry and goes to her home to eat her carrots. Hare finds something moving in her house. She is scared, so she goes to ask for Monkey and Elephant's help. At the end, they find Mouse inside the house.

### Test Yourself on Unit 2

I'm Ola. I have a pet cat. I think cats make the best pets. They are clean and calm animals. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. They are independent animals. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy.

## UNIT 3

### Practice on Lesson 1

Reem and Rana are friends. They are planning for their next vacation in Cairo. There are many things to do and see there. Reem thinks they should visit the Manial Palace Museum on Monday, where they can take photos for their school project. Rana wants to go quad biking in the desert on Tuesday. They can go there by bus.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. Little Deer is afraid, but he faces his fear. He goes to the lake and has a drink. Water is delicious! Little Deer is happy and proud.



### Test Yourself on Unit 3

My name is Amira. I like playing tennis. I practice on Fridays and Sundays. I always play well when I keep practicing every week. I have a match, and I hope I can win. If I practice hard, I can win the match. The match is on February 3rd. I'm very excited. My friends and my family are coming to watch the match.

## UNIT 4

### Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Mai. We are having a birthday party today for our little sister Rana. My brother Mazen is blowing up the balloons. My father is hanging up the streamers. My sister Eman is sending email invitations to our friends. My aunt Fatma is decorating the birthday cake. I am making the playlist on my phone.

### Practice on Lesson 3

People around the world usually celebrate birthdays with birthday cakes and candles on them, but in China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthdays because they think these can give them a long life. People in China are older because they become one on the day they are born.

### Test Yourself on Unit 4

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my mother's birthday. I'm hanging up the streamers for the party. I cut the string with scissors. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They are bright and colorful. My sister is making a nice cake. My dad is buying her a beautiful present.

## UNIT 5

### Practice on Lesson 1

Rania has an interesting travel diary. She is reading it to remember her family's vacation in Croatia last year. They visited the Marco Polo Museum. The museum is on an island. It's

really an interesting place, and it's all about the travels of Marco Polo.

### Practice on Lesson 3

I read a nice story yesterday. It was a page from a diary in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The writer was traveling on a ship. He had a relaxing sleep in his cabin. The next morning, he had breakfast with others, and then the ship left the port for a mysterious island.

### Test Yourself on Unit 5

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. He was strong and had the skills to sail the felucca. I had such a wonderful experience!

## UNIT 6

### Practice on Lesson 1

Mom and Laila are making some candles. First, they need about 450 grams of wax to make three candles. They need about forty drops of perfume oil. Laila has lemon oil. It smells lovely. They need three wicks and three glasses. They also need three popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old, and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious, but Peter likes to explore them. They are full of interesting and precious things: old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

### Test Yourself on Unit 6

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients. But it also had a few common herbs and spices in it. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.

Last summer, I visited Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy city. There are a lot of things to do there. You can swim in the sea. You can also go quad biking in the desert.

We have 3 buildings in our school. In the west court, there is a water fountain. The IT building is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Mr Mahdi is the teacher who helps in the garden. Children can also grow trees with Mr Mahdi.

Belal and Amr are friends. They are at the same school. They like to do things together. They're going quad biking in the desert. They usually go to a theme park in Cairo. They want to ride on a rollercoaster. It will be a lot of fun.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. A lot of people like keeping cats. They have soft fur. They can make you happy. They are independent and friendly animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

My name is Akram. I'm 20 years old. I live in Cairo with my family. My family are farmers. We have a big farm. We grow a lot of vegetables like tomatoes, peppers, and lettuce. We also plant some fruits like apples, oranges and pineapples.

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He rode a camel all the way to China! He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences; it is called The Travels of Marco Polo. It was a very difficult journey.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are nice to touch. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

Mrs. Asmaa is a teacher of math. She is very good at teaching it. She helps me a lot. She works at a big school. She likes being a teacher. She has three children. She went on a vacation last summer. She went to Giza and visited the Pyramids.

Adel likes his family because they are very kind. He visits his grandparents every year in May. He does a lot of amazing things there. He goes fishing with his grandpa. Adel plays football with his father in the evenings. He sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen.

We are having a birthday party for my little sister Nour. My mom and my aunt are decorating the cake. Soha is sending email invitations to our friends. I'm making the playlist on my phone. My brother is blowing up some balloons. A lot of people are coming.

My name is Ola. I have a pet cat. Cats are clean and calm animals. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

Our favorite hobby is reading. We have a big library at our school. We read and borrow books from the library. We go to the library twice a week. The teacher helps us to read and borrow the books. The library is a quiet and calm place to read.



# Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

## UNIT 1

### [Unit 1 – Lesson 2]

#### "Mini forest"

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife – like plants, animals and other living things. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

### [Unit 1 – Lessons 4&5]

From	: sarah@gmail.com
To	: sally@gmail.com
Subject	: My new life in Scotland

Dear Sally,

How are you and your family? I'm so happy to send you this email. I'm finally in Scotland with my family. It's really interesting! Our apartment is in the city center. It's on the third floor and there is a park on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. There's always something to see there. See you soon.

Lots of love,  
Sarah

### [Unit 1 – Test Yourself]

#### "Our community garden"

I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden. The community garden is a big green space on the roof of the apartment block. People who work there are all volunteers. People grow vegetables to eat and sometimes sell them in the market. They only use natural fertilizer, so their food is fresh and organic.

## UNIT 2

### [Unit 2 – Lesson 2]

#### "My school"

I go to a big school near my house. We have two laboratories at our school. We do our experiments inside the science laboratories. We use computers and the internet in the new IT building. We play basketball and handball at the gymnasium. We also have a new playground and playing field.

### [Unit 2 – Lessons 4&5]

#### "My favorite pet"

I love animals. Cats are my favorite pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.

### [Unit 2 – Test yourself]

#### “My first day at school”

I'm Malek. I'm 12 years old now. I remember my first day at school. I was worried. I felt nervous and shy. My teacher helped me. He was very kind. He teaches me English. I made some friends. Students in my class were very friendly. I love my school, teachers and friends.

### [Unit 2 – Al-Azhar Corner]

#### “Cats are the best pets”

I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

## UNIT 3

### [Unit 3 – Lesson 2]

#### “Tips for studying”

Here are some tips for studying. Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine.

### [Unit 3 – Lessons 4&5]

#### “An amazing trip to Sharm El-Sheikh”

I went to Sharm El-Sheikh with my family last summer. It's in Sinai by the Red Sea. We stayed at a hotel there. The weather was cool and the sea was clear. We enjoyed swimming and diving in the Red Sea. We relaxed on the beach. We enjoyed going quad biking in the desert.

### Unit 3 – Test yourself

#### “An amazing holiday destination”

Luxor is an interesting town in south Egypt. It costs LE 500 per night, per person in a double room to visit Luxor. There are lots of things to do there. You can explore the city souks, go on boat trips on the Nile, or get in an air balloon.

## UNIT 4

### [Unit 4 – Lesson 2]

From : amr@gmail.com	
To	: nader@gmail.com
Subject : My exams	
Dear Nader, How are things? I'm so happy to send you this email. I have many things to do this week. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. It's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! Tell me about what you are doing this week. See you soon. Lots of love, Amr	



## [Unit 4 – Lessons 4&5]

From	: nesma@gmail.com
To	: amr@gmail.com
Subject	: The Book Day Party

Dear Mr Amr,

I am writing to invite you to The Book Day Party this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Tuesday April 30 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Tuesday April 30  
Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm  
Location: School Hall  
RSVP in writing to the email address above.  
Please reply by April 28 to confirm if you can attend the party.

Yours sincerely,  
Nesma

## [Unit 4 – Test Yourself]

### “My birthday party”

Today is my birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

## UNIT 5

## [Unit 5 – Lesson 2]

### “Nok Civilization”

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. They also found stone farming tools that belong to an advanced culture from the past. They called this culture the “Nok” civilization after the village where the objects were found.

## Unit 5 – Lessons 4&5]

### “My trip to Al-Fayoum”

I had an amazing experience last week. I went on a trip with my friends to Al Fayoum. We went by car. It was a long way, but we enjoyed going there. We went on a boat trip on Qarun Lake. We were fascinated by the waterfall. We went on a boat trip. It was amazing. We had a delicious lunch on a felucca. It was a wonderful day.

## [Unit 5 – Test yourself]

### “Marco Polo”

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice. Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China. When he reached China, he recorded much information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diaries that described his journey.

## UNIT 6

### [Unit 6 – Lesson 2]

#### **“Ancient Egyptians ate well”**

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! Most people in Ancient Egypt ate a little meat, usually at festivals. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! Ancient Egyptians used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.

### [Unit 6 – Lessons 4&5]

#### **“Egyptian spices”**

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth.

### [Unit 6 – Test yourself]

#### **“Salt dough recipe”**

You need 1 cup of plain flour, 125g of salt and 125ml of water. First, heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the ingredients in a bowl until they form a ball. Cut it into shapes. It takes 3 hours for cooking until they are hard. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.